The Ultimate Driving
Machine

Contents

A-Z

740i
740Li
750i
750Li
760Li
750i xDrive
750Li xDrive

Owner's Manual for Vehicle

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:
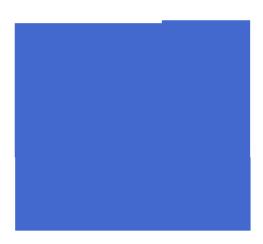
Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW.

Any updates made after the editorial deadline for the printed or integrated Owner's Manual are located in the appendix of the printed quick reference for the vehicle.

Supplementary information can be found in the additional bro-

BMW recommends *Castrol*

Contents

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic or item is by using the index, refer to page 288.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation
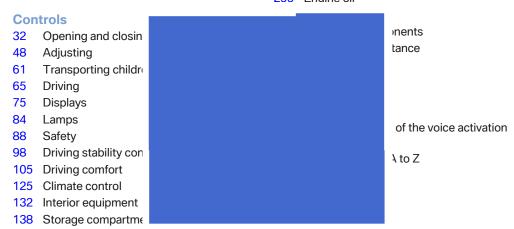
Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Notes

Using this Owner's Manual

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

Any updates made after the editorial deadline for the Owner's Manuals are located in the appendix of the printed quick reference for the vehicle.

Additional sources

Should you have any qu
center will be glad to ad

Information on BMW, e.
available on the Internet

Symbols

⚠ Indicates precaution
precisely in order to avo
sonal injury and serious

◄ Marks the end of a sp
tion.

* Indicates special equi
equipment and optional
equipment and functions not yet available at the time of printing.

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions.

›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.

»...« Identifies the answers generated by the voice activation system.

♻ Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

Symbols on vehicle components

⌷ Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

Your individual vehicle

You have decided in favor of a vehicle with individualized equipment and features.

This Owner's Manual describes the entire array of options and equipment available for a specific model.

l may contain accessories
ou may not have specified

l equipment are marked

ment not described in this
se refer to the Supple-
uals.

ehicles, some controls are
an shown in the illustra-

Owner's Manual

our vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

Any updates made after the editorial deadline for the Owner's Manuals are located in the appendix of the printed quick reference for the vehicle.

For your own safety

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e.g., the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair methods.

Therefore, have this work performed only by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with appropriately trained personnel.

If this work is not carried out properly, there is the danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.

Parts and Accessorie

For your own safety, use cessories approved by BM
chase accessories tested
BMW and Genuine BMW
ously acquire the assuran
thoroughly tested by BMW
performance when install
BMW warrants these part
fects in material and work
accept any liability for dan
stallation of parts and acc
by BMW. BMW cannot tes
by other manufacturers to
on a BMW safely and with
vehicle, its operation, or it
BMW Parts, BMW Access
ucts approved by BMW, together with professional advice on using these items, are available from all BMW centers. Installation and operation of non-BMW approved accessories such as alarms, radios, amplifiers, radar detectors, wheels, suspension components, brake dust shields, telephones, including operation of any mobile phone from within the vehicle without using an externally mounted antenna, or transceiver equipment, for instance, CBs, walkie-talkies, ham radios or similar accessories, may cause extensive damage to the vehicle, compromise its safety, interfere with the vehicle's electrical system or affect the validity of the BMW Limited Warranty. See your BMW center

for additional information. Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any certified automotive part.

California Proposition 65 Warning

California laws require us to state the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of in or emit chemicals
alifornia to cause cancer
er reproductive harm.
s and related accessories
ompounds. Wash your
sed engine oil contains
used cancer in laboratory
t your skin by washing
nd water.

ty

u read this publication
e is covered by the fol-

d Warranty.

mited Warranty.

▷ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.

▷ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.

▷ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to op-

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

7

erate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a cra or death, you should imm tional Highway Traffic S NHTSA, in addition to n America, LLC, P.O. Box Jersey 07675-1227, Te 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives simil open an investigation, an defect exists in a group a recall and remedy cam

However, NHTSA canno individual problems betv or BMW of North Americ

To contact NHTSA, you Safety Hotline toll-free a (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may telephone the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

9

At a glance

...views of buttons, switches and ...ded to familiarize you with your ...so become quickly acquainted ...e control concepts and options.

Cockpit

All around the steering wheel

1 Seating comfort fun~~~~

	Gentlemar~~~~
M	Seat, mirr~~~~ ory* 57
	Active sea~~~~

2 Roller sunblind* for rear window   45

3 Safety switch for the windows and the roller sun blind* in the rear   45

4 Power windows   44

5 Exterior mirror operation   58

6 Driver assistance systems*

/∆\	Active Blind Spot Detection* 95
⊶	Collision warning* 110

~~parture warning*   94~~

~~sion with pedestrian detection   120~~

~~Display*   123~~

7 Lamps

≠D	Front fog lamps* 87
≡D Œ	Parking lamps 84
≡D	Low beams 84

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

13

Instrument cluster

Indicator/warni...   ...or/warning lamps

Instrument cluster   ...system

The indicator and warning lamps can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lamps are checked for proper functioning when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on, and light up briefly in the process.

◄►►	
PARK	Parking brake
((P))	Parking brake in Canadian models
AUTO H	Automatic Hold*
≠D	Front fog lamps*

14

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Symbol	Function or system		Symbol	Function or system
≡D	High beams		⊘!	Steering system
≡⫶A	High-beam Assistant*		⌂	Emissions
≡DŒ	Parking lamps, headlamp control		BRAKE	Brake system
⟰	Active Cruise Control*		((!))	Brake system in Canadian models
⬗	Vehicle detection, Active Cruise Control*		ABS	Antilock Brake System ABS
⏱	Cruise control*			e System ABS in Cana-
⟋ ⟍	Lane departure			
⬗	DSC Dynamic S			bination with a symbol in
				explain a Check Control
⬗ OFF	DSC Dynamic S DTC Dynamic T			ing of the indicator and
(!)	Tire Pressure M			t messages
				on the Control Display,
⚹	Safety belts			nalfunction or the re-
				alled up via Check Con-
⚹	Airbag system			sages is displayed auto-

matically.

Instrument cluster, electronic displays

1 Symbols and messa   , radio 77
2 Range 75   splays 74
3 Computer 77
4 Navigation display*
   Service display 81

All around the center console

1 Headliner 18

2 Control Display 19

3 Glove compartment, t

4 Air vent 128

5 ⚠ Hazard warr

   🔑 Central lock

6 Radio 172

   CD/Multimedia 179

7 Automatic climate control 125

8 Controller with buttons 19

9 (P) Parking brake 66

   AUTO H Auto Hold 68

   Distance Con-

   * 119

   amera* 116

   * 118

   Descent Control* 99

   Driving Control 102

   COMFORT

   🚗 OFF DSC Dynamic Stability Control 102

12 Transmission selector lever

17

All around the headliner

1 ⟨SOS⟩   Emergency   lamps* 87

2 ⟨⁄⟩   Glass sunr   amps 87

3 ⟨PASS AIR BAG OFF⟩   Indicator la
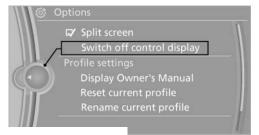airbag* 9

iDrive

The concept

The iDrive combines the functions of a multitude of switches. Thus, these functions can be operated from a central location.

⚠️ Using the iDrive during a trip

To avoid becoming distracted and posing an unnecessary hazard to your vehicle's occupants and to other road users, never attempt to use the controls or enter information unless traffic and road conditions allow this.◀

Controls at a gla...

Controls

1 Control Display

2 Controller with butto...

The buttons can be us...
directly. The controller can be used to select menu items and create the settings.
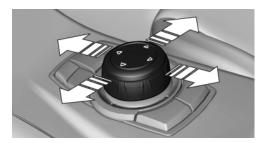
Control Display

Notes

▷ To clean the Control Display, follow the care instructions.

▷ Do not place objects close to the Control Display; otherwise, the Control Display can be damaged.

Switching off

1. [OPTION] Press the button.

2. "Switch off control display"

...ain to switch the screen

...create settings.

2. Press.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

3. Move in four directions.

Buttons on controller

Press the button	Function
MENU	Open the main menu.
RADIO	Open
CD	Open menu
NAV	Open view.
TEL	Open menu
BACK	Displ pane
OPTION	Open

Operating conc

Opening the main menu

 Press the button.

The main menu is displayed.

All iDrive functions can be called up via the main menu.

Selecting menu items

Menu items shown in white can be selected.

1. Turn the controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.

...er.

Owner's Manual

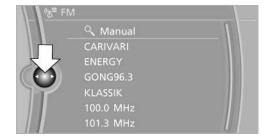ll, menu items that can be otation marks, e.g.,

n panels

elected, e.g., "Radio", a d. Panels can overlap.

er to the left.

is closed and the previous

el is opened again by pressing the BACK button. In this case, the current panel is not closed.

▷ Move the controller to the right.
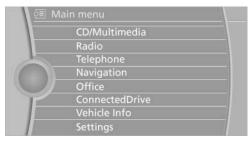
A new panel is opened on top of the previous display.

White arrows pointing to the left or right indicate that additional panels can be opened.

View of an opened menu

When a menu is opened, it generally opens with the panel that was last selected in that menu. To display the first panel of a menu:

▷ Move the controller to the left repeatedly until the first panel is displayed.

▷ Press the menu button on the controller twice.

Opening the Options menu

OPTION Press the button.

The "Options" menu is di

Additional options: move
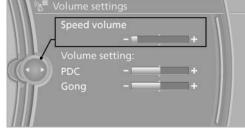right repeatedly until the "
played.

Options menu

The "Options" menu con:

▷ Screen settings, e.g., "Split screen".

    This area remains unchanged.

▷ Control options for the selected main menu, e.g., for "Radio".

▷ If applicable, further operating options for the selected menu, e.g., "Store station".

Changing settings

1. Select a field.

2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed.

3. Press the controller.

Activating/deactivating the functions

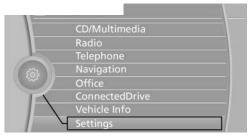Several menu items are preceded by a check-
box. It indicates whether the function is acti-
                                    electing the menu item
                                    s the function.
                                    ivated.
                                    ctivated.

ng the clock

                                    :on. The main menu is

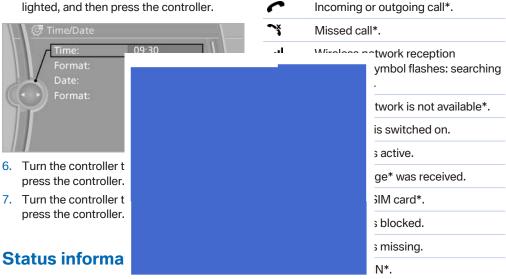   until "Settings" is high-
                                    ess the controller.

3. If necessary, move the controller to the left to display "Time/Date".

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

21

4. Turn the controller until "Time/Date" is highlighted, and then press the controller.

5. Turn the controller until "Time:" is highlighted, and then press the controller.

6. Turn the controller t
   press the controller.
7. Turn the controller t
   press the controller.

Status informa

Status field

The following information is displayed in the status field at the top right:

▷ Time.

▷ Current entertainment source.

▷ Sound output, on/off.

▷ Wireless network reception strength.

▷ Telephone status.

▷ Traffic bulletin reception*.

Status field symbols
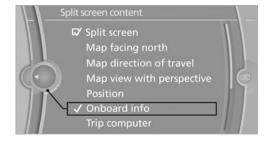
The symbols are grouped as follows.

Radio symbols

Symbol	Meaning
TI	Traffic bulletins* are switched on.
HD)	HD Radio™* is switched on.
🎿	Satellite radio* is switched on.

Telephone symbols

Symbol	Meaning
📞	Incoming or outgoing call*.
📞	Missed call*.
⊪	Wireless network reception ... symbol flashes: searching ...
	...twork is not available*.
	...is switched on.
	...s active.
	...ge* was received.
	...SIM card*.
	...s blocked.
	...s missing.
	...N*.

Entertainment symbols

Symbol	Meaning
💿	CD/DVD* player.
💾	Music collection*.
gracenote	Gracenote® database*.
✐	AUX-IN port.
✐AUX-L	Rear AUX-IN port on the left*.
✐AUX-R	Rear AUX-IN port on the right*.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Symbol	Meaning
⌇	USB audio interface*.
🖇	Mobile phone audio interface*.

Additional symbols

Symbol	Meaning
⌀	Spoken instructions* are switched off.
🚗	Request of the current vehicle position*.

Split screen*

General information

Additional information ca[...]
right side of the split scre[...]
from the computer.

In the divided screen view[...]
screen, this information re[...]
when you change to anot[...]

Switching the split s[...]

1. OPTION Press the butto[...]

2. "Split screen"

Selecting the display

1. OPTION Press the button.

2. "Split screen"

3. Move the controller until the split screen is selected.

4. Press the controller or select "Split screen content".

5. Select the desired menu item.

Split screen content
☑ Split screen
Map facing north
Map direction of travel
Map view with perspective
Position
✓ Onboard info
Trip computer

Programmable memory buttons

[...]n be stored on the pro-
[...]ttons and called up di-
[...]s, navigation destina-
[...]nd entry points into the

[...] for the remote control

[...]n via the iDrive.

[...]esired button for more
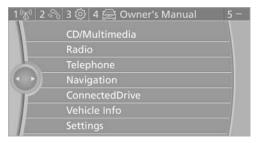
Running a function

1...8 Press the button.
The function will run immediately. This means, for example, that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

Displaying the button assignment

Use a finger to touch the buttons. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The key assignment is displayed at the top edge of the screen.

23

1 📶	2 🔧	3 ⚙	4 🚗 Owner's Manual	5 —

- CD/Multimedia
- Radio
- Telephone
- Navigation
- ConnectedDrive
- Vehicle Info
- Settings

▷ To display short information: touch the button.

▷ To display detailed information: touch the button for an extended period.

Deleting the button assignments

1. Press buttons 1 and 8 simultaneously for approx. five seconds

2. "OK"

Entering letters

1. Turn the controller: ... bers.

2. Select additional let... needed.

3. "OK": confirm the e...

Symbol	Function
⇤	Press the con... or number.
⇤	Press the controller for an extended period: delete all letters or numbers.
⎵	Enter a blank space.

Switching between letters and numbers

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering letters and numbers:

Symbol	Function
A^{B}C	Enter the letters.
1@+	Enter the numbers.

Switching between upper and lower case letters

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering upper and lower case letters:

Symbol	Function
▲ abc	Move the controller up: switch from upper to lower case letters.
▲ ABC	Move the controller up: switch from lower to upper case letters.

Entry comparison

Entry of names and addresses: the selection is narrowed down every time a letter is entered and letters may be added automatically.

...uously compared to the ...icle.

... are offered during the en-...is available.

...: town/city names can be ...spelling of language avail-...ol Display.

Voice activation system*

The concept

▷ The voice activation system can be used to operate functions by means of spoken commands.

▷ Most menu items on the Control Display can be voiced as commands. The system prompts you to make your entries.

▷ Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary cannot be operated using the voice activation system.

▷ The system uses a special microphone on the driver's side.

▷ ›...‹ Verbal instructions Manual to use with th tem.

Requirements

Via the Control Display, s also supported by the voi so that the spoken comm

Set the language, refer to

Using voice acti

Activating the voice a

1. ⏍ Press the button on the steering wheel.

2. Wait for the signal.

3. Say the command.

   The command is displayed in the instrument cluster.

⏍ This symbol in the instrument cluster indicates that the voice activation system is active.

If no other commands are available, continue operating the function via iDrive.

Terminating the voice activation system

Briefly press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

Possible commands

Having possible commands read aloud

The commands available in each case depend on the menu item selected on the Control Display.

T............ommands read out ....‹

............ings" menu is displayed, ...ettings are read out loud.

.... voice activation

.... Help‹

...........or the help dialog:

..........s‹: information about the ....ptions and the most im- ....for them are announced.

.........ivation‹: information ....of operation for the voice ....s announced.

Executing functions using short commands

Functions on the main menu can be performed directly by means of short commands, irrespective of which menu item is currently selected, e.g., ›Vehicle status‹.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Example: playing back a CD

1. Switch on the Entertainment sound output if necessary.

2. ⟨⟨ℰ⟩ Press the button on the steering wheel.

3. ›C D and multimedia‹

   The medium last played is played back.

4. ⟨⟨ℰ⟩ Press the button on the steering wheel.

5. ›C D track ...‹ e.g., CD track 4.

Setting the voice dialog

You can set whether the [...] standard dialog or a sho[...]

In the shorter variant of t[...] nouncements from the s[...] abbreviated form.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech mode:"
4. Select the setting.

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button while giving an instruction until the desired volume is set.

▷ The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.

▷ The volume is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Notes on Emergency Requests

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection.

Instead, use the SOS button*, refer to page 266, in the vicinity of the interior mirror.

Environmental conditions

[...]ls, numbers, and letters
[...] normal volume, empha-

[...]ands in the language of
[...] system.

[...]adio station, use the com-
[...] of the station name.

[...]indows, and glass sun-
[...]event noise interference.

[...]er noise in the vehicle

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

The integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display. The equipment and functions that are in the vehicle are described therein.

Components of the integrated Owner's Manual

The integrated Owner's Manual consists of three parts, which offer various levels of information or access possibilities.

Quick Reference Gui...

Located in the Quick Refe...
formation for the operatio...
operation of basic vehicle...
to do in the event of a flat...
can also be displayed dur...

Search by pictures

Information and descriptio...
tions can be searched via...
This is helpful, for exampl...
an outfitting package that...
needed.

Owner's Manual

Information and descriptio...
by direct entry of a search term via the index.

Select components

1. MENU Press the button.
2. Turn the controller: open "Vehicle Info".
3. Press the controller.
4. Selecting desired range:
   - ▷ "Quick reference"
   - ▷ "Search by pictures"

▷ "Owner's Manual"

Leafing through the Owner's

...link access

...l the next or previous

...out link access

...directly while skipping

...nce. Now simply press
...m page to page.

Context help - Owner's Manual to the temporarily selected function

The relevant information can be opened directly.

Opening during operation via iDrive

To move directly from the application on the Control Display to the options menu:

1. OPTION Press the button or move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.

2. "Display Owner's Manual"

Opening when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

"Display Owner's Manual"

Changing between a function and the Owner's Manual

To change from a function, e.g., radio, to the Owner's Manual on the Control Display, and to switch between the two

1. OPTION Press the button to the right repeated menu is displayed.

2. "Display Owner's M

3. Select the desired p Manual.

4. OPTION Press the butto function displayed la

5. BACK Press the butto of the Owner's Manu

To switch back and forth the function displayed last and the page of the Owner's Manual displayed last, repeat steps 4 and 5. This opens a new panel every time.

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The Owner's Manual can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly.

Storing

1. Select "Owner's Manual" via the iDrive.

2. 1…8 Press the desired button for more than 2 seconds.

Executing

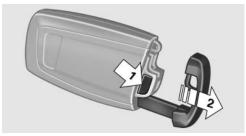1…8 Press the button.
The Owner's Manual is displayed immediately.

Controls

is intended to provide you with
ill give you complete control of
atures and accessories that are
g and your safety, comfort and
nvenience are described here.

Opening and closing

Remote control/key

Buttons on the remote control

1 Unlocking

2 Locking

3 Opening the trunk li...

4 Panic mode*, headla... ...nent in the front center
ture

General information

The vehicle is supplied w...
with keys.

Every remote control co...
battery.

The settings called up a...
the vehicle is unlocked d...
control is used to unlock...
Profile, refer to page 33...

In addition, information about service require-
ments is stored in the remote control, Service
data in the remote control, refer to page 258.

Integrated key

Press the button on the back of the remote con-
trol, arrow 1, and pull out the key, arrow 2.

...s the following locks:

...nent in the front center

...nent contains a switch for
...e trunk lid, refer to

...tery

1. Take the integrated key out of the remote
   control.
2. Push in the catch with the key, arrow 1.
3. Remove the cover of the battery compart-
   ment; see arrow 2.
4. Insert a battery of the same type with the
   positive side facing upwards.
5. Press the cover closed.

Take the used battery to a recycling center or to your service center.

New remote controls

You can obtain new remote controls from your service center.

Loss of the remote controls

Lost remote controls can be blocked by your service center.

Emergency detection of remote control

It is possible to switch on the ignition or start the engine in situations such as the following:

▷ Interference of radio transmission to remote control by external so

▷ Discharged battery in

A Check Control messag tempt is made to switch the engine.

Starting the engine i emergency detection

If a corresponding Check Control message appears, hold the remote control, as shown, against the marked area on the steering column and press the Start/Stop button within 10 seconds while pressing the brake.

Personal Profile

The concept

Personal Profile concept

You can set several of your vehicle's functions to suit your personal needs and preferences.

▷ The settings are automatically saved in the profile currently activated.

▷ When the vehicle is unlocked, the profile that was last detected and called up with the remote control is used.

▷ Your personal settings will be recognized and called up again even if the vehicle has been used in the meantime by someone else e control.

are stored for three Per-guest profile.

ttings

can be taken with you to ed with the Personal Pro-nformation, contact your

ce via:

, refer to page 138, in ment onto a USB device.

t

s

A different profile can be called up than the one associated with the remote control currently in use.

1. "Settings"

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference
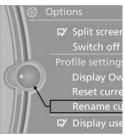
2. "Profiles"

3. Select a profile.

The profile that is opened is assigned to the remote control currently in use.
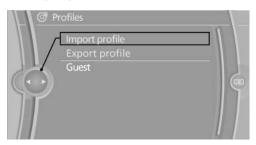
Renaming profiles

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"

   The current profile is selected.

3. Open "Options".
4. "Rename current profile"

Resetting profiles

The settings of the active profile are reset to their default values.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"

   The current profile is selected.

3. Open "Options".
4. "Reset current profile"

Importing profiles

Existing settings and contacts are overwritten with the imported profile.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Import profile"

4. USB interface, refer to page 138: "USB device"

active profile and the saved ...rted.

storing and opening per-...tance if settings are acci-...eleted.

...er to page 138: "USB

...rofile

...be used to make individual settings without affecting the three Personal Profiles.

This can be useful for drivers who are using the vehicle temporarily and do not have their own profile.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. The current profile is selected.
4. Open "Guest".
5. Create the settings.

Note: the guest profile cannot be renamed.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Display profile list during start

The profile list can be displayed during each start for selecting the desired profile.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Display user list at startup"

Personal Profile settings

The following functions and settings can be stored in a profile.

More information on the settings can be found under:

▷ Active Cruise Control: collision warning, refer to page 110.

▷ Exterior mirror positio

▷ CD/Multimedia, refer source listened to las

▷ Dynamic Driving Cont fer to page 103.

▷ Driver's seat position, tomatic retrieval after

▷ Programmable memo page 23: assignment.

▷ Head-up Display, refe tion, brightness and p

▷ Headlamp courtesy d page 84: time setting.

▷ Tone, refer to page 1

▷ Automatic climate control, refer to page 125: settings.

▷ Steering wheel position, refer to page 60.

▷ Navigation, refer to page 152: map views, route criteria, voice output on/off.

▷ Night Vision with pedestrian detection, refer to page 120: selection of functions and type of display.

▷ Daytime running lights*, refer to page 85: current setting.

▷ Park Distance Control PDC, refer to page 171: adjusting the signal tone volume.

▷ Radio, refer to page 172: stored stations, station listened to last, special settings.

▷ Backup camera, refer to page 116: selection of functions and type of display.

▷ Side View, refer to page 118: selection of the display type.

▷ Language on the Control Display, refer to page 81.

▷ Lane departure warning, refer to page 94: last setting, on/off.

▷ Active Blind Spot Detection, refer to page 95: last setting, on/off.

▷ Triple turn signal activation, refer to page 70.

▷ Locking the vehicle, refer to page 39: after ...er starting to drive.

...g system

...tem becomes active ...is closed.

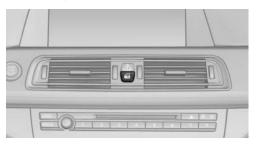...ously engages and re- ...following:

... outside

▷ Via the remote control.

▷ Via the driver's door lock*.

▷ Via the door handles*.

▷ Via the button in the trunk lid*.

The following takes place simultaneously when locking/unlocking the vehicle via the remote control:

▷ Anti-theft protection is switched on/off. Doors cannot be unlocked using the lock buttons or the door opener.

▷ The welcome lamps, interior lamps and courtesy lamps* are switched on and off.

▷ The alarm system*, refer to page 43, is armed or disarmed.

Operating from the inside

Via the button for the central locking system.

If the vehicle has been locked from inside, the fuel filler flap remains ur

If an accident of a certai
central locking system u

The hazard warning sys
come on.

Opening and cl
outside

Using the remote co

General information

Take the remote c

People or animals
parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside.◄

Unlocking

Press the button.

The vehicle is unlocked.

You can set how the vehicle is to be unlocked.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"

3. "Unlock button:"

4. Select the desired function:

   ▷ "Driver's door only"

   Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.

icle is unlocked.

ng

an be used to simultane-
vs and the glass sunroof*.

ld the button on the re-

glass sunroof* open.

stops the motion.

n on the remote control.

Do not lock from the outside

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if there are people in it, as the vehicle cannot be unlocked from inside without special knowledge.◄

Switching on the interior lamps, courtesy lamps*, and welcome lamps

Press the button on the remote control with the vehicle locked.

Panic mode*

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

⬦ Press the button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Switching on the headlamp courtesy delay feature

⬦ Briefly press the button on the remote control.

The duration can be set in the Control Display.

Opening the trunk lid

🚗 Press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second and release.

The trunk lid opens, regardless of whether it was previously locked or unlo

During opening, the trunk
Ensure that adequate cle
fore opening.

In some vehicle equipmer
can only be opened using
the vehicle was unlocked

To avoid locking yourself
not place the remote cont
The trunk lid is locked aga
pushed closed.

Confirmation signals

1. "Settings"

2. "Door locks"

3. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals.

   ▷ "Acoustic sig. lock/unlock"

   ▷ "Flash when lock/unlock"

Retrieving the seat, mirror, and steering wheel settings

The driver's seat, exterior mirror, and steering wheel positions selected last are stored for the currently used remote control.

When the vehicle is unlocked, these positions are automatically retrieved if this function was activated.

⚠️ Pinch hazard when moving back the seat

If this function is used, first make sure that the footwell behind the driver's seat is empty. Otherwise, people can be injured or objects damaged when the seat is moved back.◄

The adjustment procedure is interrupted:

▷ When a seat position switch is pressed.

the seat, mirror, and steer-
s pressed briefly.

auto."

Malfunction

If the vehicle can no longer be locked or unlocked with the remote control, the battery may be discharged or there may be interference from external sources such as mobile phones, metal objects, overhead power lines, transmission towers, etc.

If this occurs, unlock or lock the vehicle at the door lock using the key.

37

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:

▷ LX8766S.

▷ LX8766E.

▷ LX8CAS.

▷ LX8CAS2.

▷ MYTCAS4.

Compliance statement:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

▷ This device may not ___ ence, and

▷ this device must acc ___ ceived, including int ___ cause undesired op ___

Any unauthorized modif ___ these devices could voi ___ operate this equipment.

Using the door lock

General information

⚠ Do not lock from the outside

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if there are people in it, as the vehicle cannot be unlocked from inside without special knowledge.◀

⚠ Remove the key before pulling the door handle

Before pulling the outside door handle, remove the key to avoid damaging the paintwork and the key.◀

In some country-specific versions, the alarm system* is triggered if the vehicle is unlocked via the door lock.

Manual operation

If an electrical malfunction occurs, lock or unlock the vehicle using a key via the door lock on the driver's door.

Locking the doors and trunk lid at

___ ment versions, only the ___ cked via the door lock.

___ the trunk lid at once:

___ sed, lock the vehicle using ___ central locking system in

___ the driver's or front pas-

___ r's door using the ___ in the door lock, or ___ e lock button of the front ___ or and close the door from

The fuel filler flap can only be locked using the remote control.
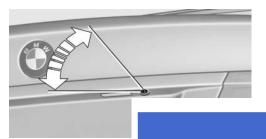
Opening from the inside

 Push the button in the driver's footwell.

If the vehicle is stationary, the trunk lid opens if it is not locked.

Manual release

All of the vehicle's keys fit the trunk lid lock, located in the license plate recess.

Turn the key all the way
unlocks.

To avoid locking yourse
not place the key or rem
area.

The trunk lid is locked a
pushed closed.

If the trunk lid is opened
alarm system armed, th

Therefore, unlock the ve

If the alarm has been trig
switch off the alarm, refe

Closing

Recessed grips in the interior trim of the trunk lid make it easier to pull down the lid.

⚠ Danger of pinching

Make sure that the closing path of the trunk lid is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◄

⚠ Do not place the remote control in the cargo area

Take the remote control with you and do not leave it in the cargo area; otherwise, the remote control may be locked inside the vehicle when the trunk lid is closed.◄

Automatic Soft Closing

To close it completely, push the trunk lid down lightly.

It is closed automatically.

le*

he inside of the trunk lid.

completely.

d operation*

Opening

The trunk lid opens fully.

▷ Press the button on the exterior of the trunk lid.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

▷   Press the button on the remote control or in the driver's footwell.

Pressing the button again stops the motion.

The opening process is interrupted as well:

▷ When starting the engine.

▷ When the vehicle starts moving.

▷ By pressing the button in the driver's footwell.

▷ By pressing the button on the inside of the trunk lid.

Closing

▷ Press the button on the ... lid.

The trunk lid closes a...

Pressing again stops ...

With Comfort Access:

▷ Press the button, arrow 1, on the inside of the trunk lid.

The trunk lid closes automatically.

Pressing again stops the motion.

▷ Press the button, arrow 2.

The trunk lid closes automatically and the vehicle is locked.

▷ Press the button on the exterior of the trunk lid.

Pressing again stops the motion.

The closing operation is interrupted:

▷ When starting the engine.

▷ The vehicle starts off with jerks.

... ng

... e closing path of the
... ise, injuries may result.◄

... emote control in the

... ol with you and do not
... a; otherwise, the remote
... nside the vehicle when

... ion occurs:

... e trunk lid, refer to

2. Open or close the trunk lid slowly and smoothly.

Locking separately

The trunk lid can be locked separately using the switch in the front center armrest.

▷ Trunk lid secured, arrow 1.

▷ Trunk lid not secured, arrow 2.

Slide the switch into the arrow 1 position. This secures the trunk lid and disconnects it from the central locking system.

41

When the center armrest is locked, the tailgate cannot be accessed. This is beneficial when the vehicle is parked using valet service. The infrared remote control can be handed out without the key.

Emergency unlocking*

Pull the handle inside th

The trunk lid unlocks.

Comfort Acces

The concept

The vehicle can be acce
the remote control.

All you need to do is to I
with you, e.g., in your jac

The vehicle automatical
control when it is nearby
compartment.

Comfort Access suppor
tions:

▷ Unlocking/locking of the vehicle.

▷ Convenient closing.

▷ Unlocking of the trunk lid separately.
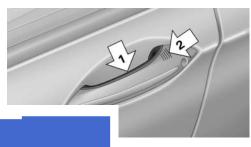
▷ Starting the engine.

Functional requirements

▷ There are no external sources of interference nearby.

▷ To lock the vehicle, the remote control must be located outside of the vehicle.

▷ The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.

▷ The engine can only be started if the remote control is inside the vehicle.

Comparison with ordinary remote control

The functions can be controlled by pressing the buttons or via Comfort Access.

Unlocking

ndle, arrow 1. This corre-
e 🔓 button.

Press the area on the door handle, arrow 2, with your finger for approx. 1 second.

This corresponds to pressing the ⚫ button.

To save battery power, ensure that the ignition and all electronic systems and/or power consumers are switched off before locking the vehicle.

Convenient closing

Press the area, arrow 2, with your finger and hold.

In addition to locking, the windows and the glass sunroof* are closed.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

⚠️ Monitor the closing process

Monitor the closing process to ensure that no one becomes trapped.◀

Unlocking the trunk lid separately

Press the button on the exterior of the trunk lid, refer to page 39.

This corresponds to pressing the 🚗 button.

⚠️ Do not place the remote control in the cargo area

Take the remote control with you and do not leave it in the cargo area; otherwise, the remote control may be locked inside the vehicle when the trunk lid is closed.◀

Malfunction

Comfort Access may not
experiences interference
such as mobile phones, m
power lines, transmission

If this occurs, open or clos
buttons on the remote con
door lock.

To subsequently start the
mote control against the r
steering column, refer to p
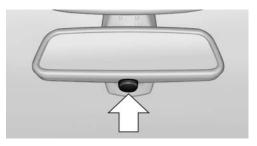
Alarm system*

The concept

The vehicle alarm system responds to:

▷ Opening of a door, the hood or the trunk lid.

▷ Movements in the vehicle: interior motion sensor, refer to page 44.

▷ Changes in the vehicle tilt, e.g., during attempts to steal a wheel or when towing the car.

▷ Interruptions in battery voltage.

The alarm system briefly indicates tampering:

▷ By sounding an acoustic alarm.

▷ By switching on the hazard warning system.

▷ By flashing the high beams.

Arming and disarming the alarm system

General information

When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control or at the door lock*, the alarm system is armed or disarmed at the same time.

Door lock and armed alarm system

Unlocking via the door lock will trigger the alarm on some country-specific versions.

Trunk lid and armed alarm system

The trunk lid can be opened using the remote control, even if the alarm system is armed.

Press the button on the remote control
econd and release.

sed, it is locked and
alarm system. The haz-
shes once.

ent variants, the trunk lid
ng the remote control if
ed first.

on on the remote control
econds.

larm

using the remote control.

▷ With Comfort Access: If you are carrying the remote control with you, pull on the door handle.

43

Closing

> ⚠️ **Danger of pinching**
>
> Monitor the closing process and make sure that the closing path of the window is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◄

▷ 🔲 Pull the switch to the resistance point.

The window closes while the switch is held.

▷ 🔲 Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.

The window closes automatically.

Pressing the switch stops the motion.

Convenient operation, refer to page , via the remote control.

Convenient closing, refer ~~~~ fort Access*.

Pinch protection

If the closing force exceed ~~~~ window closes, the closin ~~~~

The window reopens sligh ~~~~

> ⚠️ **Danger of pinching** ~~~ tection
>
> Even with the pinch prote ~~~~ that the window's closing ~~~~ wise, the closing action m ~~~~ situations, e.g., if thin obje ~~~~

> ⚠️ **Window accessorie**
>
> Do not install any accessories in the range of movement of the windows; otherwise, the pinch protection system will be impaired.◄

Closing without the pinch protection system

> ⚠️ **Danger of pinching**
>
> Monitor the closing process and make sure that the closing path of the window is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◄

For example, if there is an external danger or if ice on the windows prevents a window from closing normally, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

   Pinch protection is limited and the window reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain value.

2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without pinch protection.

Safety switch

The following functions can be locked simultaneously, using the switch:

▷ Opening and closing of the rear windows ~~~~ in the rear.

~~~~ ler sunblinds* using the ~~~~

~~~~ ower rear seats*.

~~~~ ower head restraints* in

~~~~ ff

~~~~ on.

~~~~ up if the safety function

~~~~ rear operation

~~~~ witch when transporting ~~~~ erwise, injury may result if the windows are closed without supervision.◄

Roller sunblinds*

General information

The safety switch in the driver's door can be used to prevent children, for example, from operating the roller blinds using the switches in the rear.

Press the safety switch in the driver's door. The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

45

If you are no longer able to move the roller blinds after having activated them consecutively a number of times, the system is blocked for a limited time to prevent overheating. Let the system cool.

The roller sunblinds cannot be moved at low interior temperatures.

Driver's door controls

Roller blind for rear

Press the butto

Extending or retract together

Press and hold

Rear door controls

Roller blind for the side windows

Press the button.

The roller blind can only be extended or retracted when the side window is closed.

Roller blind for rear window

Press the button.

Raising and lowering the roller blinds together

Press and hold the button.

Glass sunroof, powered*

General information

The glass sunroof and the sliding visor can be operated together or separately, using the same switch.

...perational when the igni-

...ing

...sing process and make ...ath of the glass sunroof is ...es may result.◄

...e control with you

...e control with you when ...that children, for example, ...of and injure themselves.◄

Tilting the glass sunroof

Push switch upward briefly.

▷ The closed roof is tilted and the sliding visor opens slightly.

▷ The opened roof closes until it is in its tilted position. The

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

sliding visor stays completely open.

Pressing the switch again closes the sliding visor almost completely.

Opening/closing the sliding visor

▷ Press the switch in the desired direction to the resistance point and hold it there.

The sliding visor moves while the switch is being held.

▷ Press the switch in the desired direction past the resistance point.

The sliding visor moves automatically. Pressing the switch a̶

Opening/closing the

When the sliding visor is o̶ scribed under Sliding viso̶

Opening/closing the sliding visor together

Briefly pres̶ successio̶ tion past th̶

The glass s̶ sor move t̶

switch again stops the m̶

Convenient operation, ref̶

remote control.

Pinch protection system

If the closing force when closing the glass sunroof exceeds a certain value, the closing movement is stopped, beginning at approximately the middle of the opening in the roof, or from the tilted position during closing.

The glass sunroof opens again slightly.

⚠ Danger of pinching even with pinch protection

Despite the pinch protection system, check that the roof's closing path is clear; otherwise, the closing action may not be interrupted in certain extreme situations, such as when thin objects are present.◀

Closing without the pinch protection system

For example, if there is an external danger, proceed as follows:

1. Press the switch forward beyond the resistance point and hold.

   Pinch protection is limited and the roof re̶   closing force exceeds a̶

                                         rward again beyond the
                                         d hold until the roof
                                         h protection.

                                         ower failure

                                         ring the opening or closn only be operated to a̶

                                         em

                                         alized when the vehicle̶ gine is running.

                                         g

   Monitor the closing process and make sure that the closing path of the glass sunroof is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◀

   Press the switch up and hold it until the initialization is complete:

   ▷ Initialization begins within 15 seconds and is completed when the sunroof and sliding visor are completely closed.

▷ The roof closes without pinch protection.

Adjusting

Sitting safely

The ideal seating position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

The seating position plays an important role in an accident in combination with:

▷ Safety belts, refer to page 53.

▷ Head restraints, refer to page 54.

▷ Airbags, refer to page 88.

Front seats

Adjusting

General information

⚠️ Do not adjust the s
Never attempt to a
while driving.

The seat could respond
ment and the ensuing lo
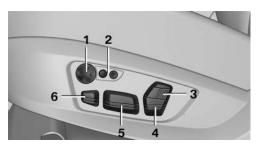could lead to an accider

⚠️ Do not incline the
rear

Do not incline the backre
ger side too far to the re
erwise, there is the dang
safety belt in an accident. This would eliminate the protection normally provided by the belt.◀

The seat setting is stored for the remote control currently in use. When the vehicle is unlocked via the remote control, the position is automatically retrieved if this function, refer to page 37, was activated.
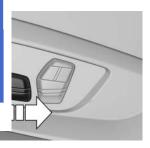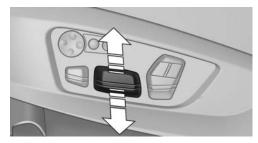
Overview

1 Lumbar support*
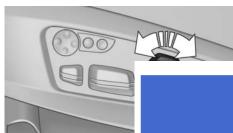
2 Backrest width*

ght, tilt

etail

2. Height.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

3. Seat tilt.

4. Backrest tilt.

5. Thigh support*.

▷ Press the front/rear section of the switch.

The curvature is increased/decreased.

▷ Press the upper/lower section of the switch.

The curvature is shifted up/down.

Backrest width*

...e backrest using the side
...ral support.

...ter and exit the vehicle,
...porarily opens fully.

Lumbar support*

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in such a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

Also supports the back in the shoulder area:

▷ Results in a relaxed seating position.

▷ Reduces strain on the shoulder muscles.

Gentleman function*

The front passenger seat can be adjusted with the switches of the driver's seat.

1. ⌨ Press the button. The LED lights up.
2. Adjust the front passenger seat on your own seat.
3. If needed, store the
   to page , for the fr
4. Press the button to   er.
   The LED goes out.

The function deactivate   be reduced or seat heat-
ter some time.   off entirely to save battery

Active seat*

Active adjustment of the   ribution*
tours reduces muscular   he seat cushion and back-
help prevent lower back   d in different ways.

                                          ribution"
                                          d seat.

⌨ Press the button. The LED lights up.

Front seat heating*

Switching on

♨ Press the button once for each temperature level.
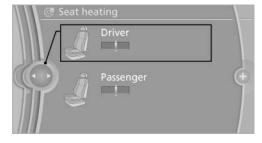
The maximum temperature is reached when

4. Turn the controller to set the temperature distribution.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Front active seat ventilation*

The seat cushion and backrest surfaces are cooled by means of integrated fans.

The ventilation rapidly cools the seat, e.g., if the vehicle interior is overheated or for continuous cooling at high temperatures.

Switching on

Press the button [ ] tion level.

The highest level is active lit.

After a short time, the sys moves down one level in cessive cooling.

Switching off

Press the button longer.

The LEDs go out.

Rear seats

Adjusting

General information

The switches for adjusting the seats are located on the center armrest of the rear seats.

⚠ Center armrest

When folding down the center armrest, ensure that the area below the center head restraint is clear. Otherwise, injury may result.◄

At a glance

1 Forward/backward, tilt

2 Backrest

3 Adjust front passenger seat

4 Reset to standard position

5 Head restraint

ljusted if the safety ndows has been

2. Seat tilt.

3. Backrest tilt.

Lumbar support

The contour of the seat backrest can be adjusted in such a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

▷ Press the front/rear

   The curvature is incr

▷ Press the upper/low

   The curvature is shi

Adjusting the front
from the rear

For more leg room in the rear, for example.

1. Press the button to activate the function, arrow.

2. Adjust the passenger seat, e.g., forward/back.

3. Press the button to deactivate the function, arrow.

The function deactivates itself automatically after some time.

Reset* to standard position

he button until the system
nent.

in rear seats*

n the top to the bottom in
k muscles.

Switching on

To switch on, press the button once for each massage level.

The highest level is active when two LEDs are lit.

Switching off

To switch off, press and hold the button.

The LEDs go out.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Rear seat heating*

Active seat ventilation*

Switching on

	Press the button once for each temper-ature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

Switching on

	Press the button once for each ventila-tion level.

The highest level is active when three LEDs are lit.

Switching off

Press the button longer.

The LEDs go out.

Temperature distribu

The heating action in the s
rest can be distributed in

1. "Climate"
2. "Seat heating rear"
3. Select the required se

Rear - left
Rear - right

4. Turn the controller to set the temperature distribution.

...elt

ats, each of which is
belt.

safety belts are being
before driving away.

Although airbags enhance safety by providing added protection, they are not a substitute for safety belts.

▷ The shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted.

▷ The two outer safety belt buckles, integrated into the rear seat, are for passengers sitting on the left and right.

▷ The center rear seat belt buckle marked with the letters CENTER is solely intended for the center passenger.

⚠ One person per safety belt

Never allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Never allow infants or small children to ride on a passenger's lap.◄

⚠ Putting on the belt

Lay the belt, without twisting, snugly across the lap and shoulders, as close to the body as possible. Make sure that the belt lies low around the hips in the lap area and does not press on the abdomen. Otherwise, the belt can slip over the hips in the lap area in a frontal impact and injure the abdomen.

The safety belt must not lie across the neck, rub on sharp edges, be routed over solid or breakable objects, or be pinched.◄

⚠ Reduction of restr

Avoid wearing clot
belt from fitting properly
belt periodically to readj
your lap; otherwise, the
safety belt may be redu

Buckling the belt

Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

Tensioning the safety belt automatically*

After the belt is buckled and the door is closed, the belt is tightened once automatically.

Unbuckling the belt

1. Hold the belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the belt buckle.

3. Guide the belt back into its reel.

Safety belt reminder for the driver's and front passenger seat

🚹 The indicator lamp flashes or lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly. The safety belt reminder is active at speeds above approx. 5 mph/8 km/h. It can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Safety mode*

In critical situations, e.g., during full brake application, the front safety belts tighten automatically.

without an accident oc-
on relaxes.

not loosen automatically,
nbuckle the belt using the
kle. Fasten the belt before
o.

belts

aused by accidents or

including the safety belt
nd have the belt anchors

placing safety belts
erformed only by your
service center; otherwise, it cannot be ensured that this safety feature will function properly.◄

Front head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraint

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.

⚠️ Adjusting the head restraint

Correctly adjust the head restraints of all occupied seats; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.◄

Height

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level.

Distance

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Active head restraint

In the event of a rear-end collision with a certain severity, the active head r~~...~~
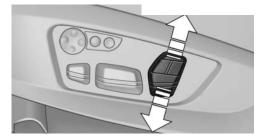reduces the distance fron~~...~~

⚠️ Reduced protective~~...~~
   ▷ Do not use seat~~...~~
     ers.

▷ Do not hang objects,~~...~~
  on the head restraints~~...~~

▷ Only attach accessori~~...~~
  to the seat or head re~~...~~

Otherwise, the protective~~...~~
head restraint will be impa~~...~~
safety of the occupants w~~...~~

Adjusting the height

Adjusting electrically.

Distance to back of head: manual head restraints

▷ Forward: pull.

▷ Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.

Dist~~...~~ck of the head: ~~...~~ints

~~...~~tomatically repositioned ~~...~~port is adjusted.

~~...~~extensions*

~~...~~sed lateral support in the resting position.

Removing

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Rear head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraint

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.

At a glance
Controls
Driving tips
Navigation
Entertainment
Communication
Mobility
Reference

⚠ Adjusting the head restraint

Correctly adjust the head restraints of all occupied seats; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.◄
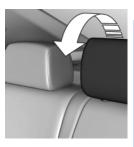
Height

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level.

Distance

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Folding forward the center head restraint

Before using the center head restraint forward.

Press the button, arrow straint forward.

Adjusting the heigh restraints

The height of the outer head restraints can be adjusted.

▷ To raise: pull.

▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.

Adjusting the height: electrical*

▷ The head restraints on the left and right rear passenger seats extend automatically whenever a passenger in the rear seat fastens his or her safety belt.

▷ In addition, the height of the head restraint can be adjusted electrically.

ead restraint

sible personal injury and ays ensure that the area ints is clear and unob-ding them upward.◄

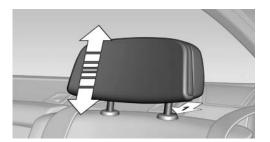it of the head restraint is safety switch for the rear e 45, has been pressed.

extensions*

Fold the side extensions on the head restraint forward for increased lateral support in the resting position.

Removing: manual head restraints

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.

56

1. Pull the head restraint upward as far as possible.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

⚠️ **Before transporting passengers**

Reinstall the head restraint before transporting anyone in the sea~~~~ ~~~~ tective function of the hea~~~~ ~~~~ able.◄

Removing: Electrical

Note

Do not remove the rear h~~~~

To avoid damage, they c~~~~ your service center.

Removing

Only remove the head res~~~~ sitting in the seat in quest~~~~

1. Completely raise the ~~~~
2. Completely pull out the head restraint with a firm tug.

⚠️ **Before transporting passengers**

Reinstall the head restraint before transporting anyone in the seat; otherwise, the protective function of the head restraint is unavailable.◄

Seat, mirror, and steering wheel memory*

General information

Front

~~~~eat, exterior mirror, and ~~~~s can be stored and re~~~~control. The adjustment ~~~~s not stored.

~~~~tions can be stored and retrieved.

Storing

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Set the desired position.
3. **M** Press the button. The LED in the button lights up.
4. Press the desired button 1 or 2. The LED goes out.

If the M button is pressed accidentally:

M Press the button again.

The LED goes out.

57

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Calling up settings

⚠️ **Do not retrieve the memory while driving**

Do not retrieve the memory setting while driving, as an unexpected movement of the seat or steering wheel could result in an accident.◄

Comfort function

1. Open the driver's door.
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Briefly press the desired button 1 or 2.

The corresponding seat position is performed automatically.

The procedure stops when a switch for adjusting the seat or one of the buttons is pressed.

Safety mode

1. Close the driver's d⃠
   nition.
2. Press and hold the d⃠
   the adjustment proc⃠

Calling up of a seat ⃠ deactivated

After a brief period, the ⃠
positions is deactivated ⃠

To reactivate calling up ⃠

▷ Open or close the d⃠

▷ Press a button on th⃠

▷ Press the Start/Stop⃠

Mirrors

Exterior mirrors

At a glance

1 Adjusting

...tic Curb Monitor*

...on

...senger side is more curved
...mirror.

...nces correctly

...d in the mirror are closer
...not estimate the distance
...ou based on what you see
...ill increase your risk of an

...tored for the remote con-
...When the vehicle is un-
...control, the position is automatically retrieved if the setting for this function is active.

Selecting a mirror

To change over to the other mirror:

Slide the mirror changeover switch.

Adjusting electrically

The setting corresponds to the direction in which the button is pressed.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Storing positions*

Seat, mirror, and steering wheel memory, refer to page .

Adjusting manually

If an electrical malfunction occurs, for example, press the edges of the mirror glass.

Automatic Curb Monitor*

When the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass tilts downward slightly on the front passenger side. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for example.

Activating

1. [button] Slide the mirr
   to the driver's side mi

2. Engage transmission

Deactivating

Slide the mirror changeo
senger's side mirror posit

Fold in and out*

[button] Press the button.

Possible up to approx. 15
For example, this is advar

▷ In car washes.

▷ In narrow streets.

▷ For folding back mirrors that were folded away manually.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

⚠ Fold in the mirror in a car wash

Before entering an automatic car wash, fold in the exterior mirrors by hand or with the button; otherwise, they could be damaged, depending on the width of the vehicle.◄
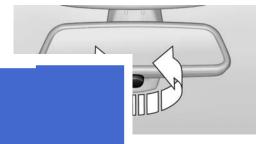
Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated whenever the engine is running.

Automatic dimming feature

Both exterior mirrors are automatically dimmed. Photocells are used for control in the Interior rear view mirror, refer to page .
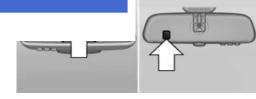
Interior rearview mirror

Reducing the blinding effect

ing at night: turn the

irror, automatic

Photocells are used for control:

▷ In the mirror glass.

▷ On the back of the mirror.

For proper operation:

▷ Keep the photocells clean.

▷ Do not cover the area between the inside rearview mirror and the windshield.

Illuminated vanity mirror* in the rear

Folding down

Press the button.

The vanity mirror folds down.

The angle can be adjust
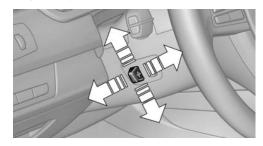
Folding up

Press the mirror up.

Steering wheel

General information

⚠ Do not adjust while

Do not adjust the s
driving; otherwise, an un
could result in an accide

Adjusting

The steering wheel can be adjusted in four directions.

Storing the position

Seat, mirror, and steering wheel memory, refer

g in and out

mporarily moves into the
ake it easier to enter and

eating*

ton.

s up.

out.

Transporting children safely

The right place for children

Note

⚠️ Children in the vehicle

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle; otherwise, they could endanger themselves and other persons, e.g., by opening the doors.◄

Children should always be in the rear

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the back seat.

⚠️ Transporting childre[n]

Only transport child[ren] 13 years of age or shorter [...] rear in child restraint fixing[...] accordance with the age, [...] child; otherwise, there is a[...] jury in an accident.

Children 13 years of age o[...] safety belt as soon as a su[...] fixing system can no longe[...] age, weight and size.◄

Children on the front [...]

Should it ever be necessa[...] straint fixing system in the[...] make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated. Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags, refer to page 89.

⚠️ Deactivating the front passenger airbags

If a child restraint fixing system is used in the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbags must be deactivated; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury to the child when the airbags are triggered, even with a child restraint fixing system.◄

Installing child restraint fixing systems

Before mounting

If the rear seat backrests are adjustable:

Before mounting child restraint fixing systems, return all of the rear seat backrests to the basic position.

Notes

⚠️ Manufacturer's information for child restraint fixing systems

[...]se child restraint fixing [...]nformation provided by [...]er; otherwise, the pro-[...]paired.◄

[...]nger seat

[...]estraint fixing system in [...]at, make sure that the [...]bags on the front pas-[...]ated.

[...]ssenger airbags auto-[...]89.

[...]ront passenger airbags [...] fixing system is used in [...]at, the front passenger airbags must be deactivated; otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury to the child when the airbags are triggered, even with a child restraint fixing system.◄

Seat position and height

Before installing a child restraint fixing system, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust its height to the middle position to obtain the best possible position for the belt and to offer optimal protection in the event of an accident.

Do not change the seat position and height after this.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Backrest width*

Before installing a child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

⚠️ Backrest width for the child seat

Before installing a child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat, the backrest width must be opened completely. Do not change the adjustment after this; otherwise, the stability of the child seat will be reduced.◀

Child seat security

The rear safety belts an[...]
safety belt can be locke[...]
mounting the child restr[...]

Locking the safety [...]

1. Pull out the belt web[...]
2. Secure the child res[...]
   the belt.
3. Allow the belt webbing to be pulled in and pull it taut against the child restraint fixing system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint fixing system.
3. Allow the belt webbing to be pulled in completely.

LATCH child restraint fixing system

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for CHildren.

Note

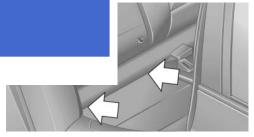⚠️ Manufacturer's information for LATCH child restraint fixing systems

To mount and use the LATCH child restraint fixing systems, observe the operating and safety information from the system manufacturer; otherwise, the level of protection may be reduced.◀

Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

[...]e the lower LATCH an-

[...]wer LATCH anchors have
[...] that the child restraint fix-
[...]snugly against the back-
[...]gree of protection offered

[...]LATCH child restraint fix-
[...]elt away from the child re-

Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors are located in the gap between the seat and backrest.

Mounting LATCH child restraint fixing systems

1. Mount the child restraint fixing system; refer to the operating instructions of the system.
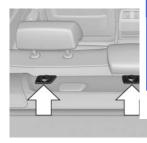2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly connected.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Mounting LATCH child restraint fixing systems on power rear seats*

1. Before mounting, adjust the seats to their basic position, refer to page 52.

2. For better accessibility, tilt the backrest back slightly.

3. Mount the child restraint fixing system; refer to the operating instructions of the system.

4. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly connected.

5. After mounting, move the backrest back up slightly so that the child restraint fixing system rests lightly against the backrest.

Child restraint fixing system with a tether strap

⚠️ LATCH mounting e
Only use the mount
LATCH retaining strap to
fixing systems; otherwise
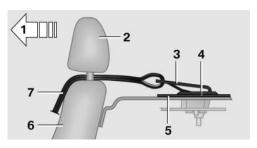could be damaged.◄

Mounting points

Depending on the vehicle equipment, there are two outer or three mounting points for child restraint fixing systems with a tether strap.

Retaining strap guide

⚠️ Retaining strap
Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not routed over the head restraints or sharp edges and is free of twisting on its way to the upper mounting point; otherwise, the belt cannot properly secure the child restraint fixing system in an accident.◄

1 Direction of travel

2 Head restraint.

3 Hook for upper retaining strap

4 Mounting point/eye

5 Rear window shelf

6 Seat backrest

ap

r retaining strap to

ing point cover.

raint. Do not change the
nt*.

aining strap between the
d restraint.

ad restraint of the middle

the retaining strap to the

ig strap by pulling it

6. Lower the head restraint.

Locking the doors and windows

Rear doors

Push the locking lever on the rear doors down.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety switch for th

Press the butto
children are bei

rear.

This locks various functi
be operated from the rea

Driving

Start/Stop button

The concept

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches the ignition on or off and starts the engine.

The engine starts if the brake pedal is pressed when you press the Start/Stop button.

Ignition on

Press the Start/Stop button, and do not press on the brake pedal at the sar

All vehicle systems are re

Most of the indicator and instrument cluster light up time.

To save battery power wh switch off the ignition and electronic systems/power

The ignition switches off a

▷ When the vehicle is lo are switched on.

▷ Shortly before the bat completely, so that th started.

▷ If the engine is switch is switched on, the system automatically switches to the radio ready state when the door is opened if the lights are switched off or the daytime running lights are switched on.

Ignition off

Press the Start/Stop button again, and do not press on the brake pedal at the same time.

All indicator lamps in the instrument cluster go out.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

⚠ Transmission position P with the ignition off

When the ignition is switched off, position P is engaged automatically. When in an automatic car wash, for example, ensure that the ignition is not switched off accidentally.◄

When the vehicle is locked using the central locking system, the ignition switches off automatically.

Radio ready state

Activate radio ready state:

s switched off: press ON/ radio.

running: press START/

ns/power consumers re- n.

hes off automatically: utes.

locked using the central

gine

n

⚠ Enclosed areas

Do not let the engine run in enclosed areas; otherwise, breathing of exhaust fumes may lead to loss of consciousness and death. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless but highly toxic gas.◄

⚠ Unattended vehicle

Do not leave the car unattended with the engine running; otherwise, it presents a potential source of danger.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Before leaving the car with the engine running, set the parking brake and place the transmission in position P or neutral to prevent the car from moving.◄

⚠️ Frequent starting in quick succession

Avoid repeated futile attempts at starting the car and avoid starting the car frequently in quick succession. Otherwise, the fuel is not burned or is inadequately burned, and there is the danger of overheating and damaging the catalytic converter.◄

Do not wait for the engine to warm up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving at moderate engine speeds.

Starting the engine

Press on
press the
The engir
starts.

Engine stop

General information

⚠️ Take the remote c

Take the remote c
leaving the vehicle so th
cannot operate the winc
selves.◄

⚠️ Set the parking brake and further secure the vehicle as required

Set the parking brake firmly when parking; otherwise, the vehicle could roll. On steep upward and downward inclines, further secure the vehicle, for example, by turning the steering wheel in the direction of the curb. ◄

Before driving into a car wash

In order for the vehicle to be able to roll into a car wash, heed the information regarding Washing in automatic car washes, refer to page .

Switching off the engine

1. Engage transmission position P with the vehicle stopped.

2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.

   The radio ready state is switched on.

3. Set the parking brake.

Parking brake

The concept

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

▸ Engine switched off: the parking brake acts
  ...s.

  ...e parking brake acts on
  ...the front and rear wheels
  ...rake system.

  ...n be set manually or auto-

  ...j and pushing the switch.
  ...ivating Automatic Hold.

Setting

(P) Pull the switch.

The LED lights up.

PARK The indicator lamp lights up in red. The parking brake is set.

((P)) Lower lamp: indicator lamp in Canadian models

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

 Set the parking brake and further secure the vehicle as required

Set the parking brake firmly when parking; otherwise, the vehicle could roll. On steep upward and downward inclines, further secure the vehicle, for example, by turning the steering wheel in the direction of the curb. ◄

While driving

Use while driving:

Pull the switch and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the button is being pulled.

PARK The indicator lamp lights up in red, a signal sounds and the brake lamps light up.

((P)) Lower lamp: indicator lamp in Canadian models

If the vehicle is braked to
2 mph/3 km/h, the parking

Releasing

((P)) Press the switch wh
pressed or transmis
gaged.

The LED and indicator lan

The parking brake is relea

 Take the remote co
Take the remote co
leaving the vehicle so that
cannot release the parking brake.◄

Manual release

The parking brake can be released manually in the event of a power failure or electrical fault.

 Before releasing, secure the vehicle against rolling

Before releasing the parking brake manually, and whenever you park the vehicle with the parking brake released, ensure that position P of the automatic transmission is engaged.

Secure the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the inclination of the road, e.g., with a wheel chock; otherwise, there is the danger of the vehicle rolling.◄

Unlocking

1. Remove the release tool from the tool kit.

el in the cargo area.

rim in the cargo area, re-
with the release tool, ar-

67

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 606 497 - 03 11 490

4. Place the release tool on the release point, arrow.

5. Forcefully pull the release tool up against the resistance until you notice a marked increase in the resistance and the parking brake releases audibly.

⚠ Have the malfunct

If the parking brak

manually in response to

technicians can return it

Have the malfunction co

center.◀

After a power failure

⚠ Only put the parking brake into operation after a power failure

The parking brake should only be put into operation again if it was manually released due to an interruption in the supply of electrical power. Otherwise, it cannot be ensured that the parking brake will function properly.◀

Putting the parking brake into operation

1. Switch on the ignition.

2. ⓟ Press the switch while the brake is depressed or transmission position P is engaged.

It may take several seconds for the brake to be put into operation. Any sounds associated with this are normal.

PARK The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation.

((ⓟ)) Lower lamp: indicator lamp in Canadian models.

Automatic Hold

The concept

...he driver by automatically ...the brake, such as when ...o traffic.

...tically held in place when

...m prevents the vehicle ...when driving away.

For your safety

Under the following conditions, Automatic Hold is automatically deactivated and the parking brake is set:

▷ The engine is switched off.

▷ A door is opened and driver's safety belt is unbuckled.

▷ The moving vehicle is brought to a standstill using the parking brake.

PARK

The indicator lamp switches from green to red and the letters AUTO H go out.

Lower lamp: indicator lamp in Canadian models

Before driving away:

▷ Release the parking brake manually.

▷ Reactivate Automatic Hold.

⚠ Leaving the vehicle with the engine running

Before leaving the vehicle with the engine running, engage position P of the automatic transmission and ensure that the parking brake is set. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to roll.◀

Activating

This function can be activ
door is closed and the saf
while driving.

AUTO H Press the button
The LED and the
up.

AUTO H The indicator lamp
Automatic Hold is

Deactivating

AUTO H Press the button
The LED and the
out.

Automatic Hold is deactivated.

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, press on the brake pedal to deactivate it.

When the parking brake, refer to page 66, is set manually, Automatic Hold is deactivated automatically.

Driving

Automatic Hold is activated: the vehicle is automatically secured against rolling when it stops.

PARK

The indicator lamp lights up in green.

Step on the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The brake is released automatically.

The indicator lamp goes out.

Lower lamp: indicator lamp in Canadian models

⚠ Before driving into a car wash

Deactivate Automatic Hold; otherwise, the parking brake will be set when the vehicle is stationary and the vehicle will no longer be able to roll.◀

Parking

The parking brake is automatically set if the en
le the vehicle is being
l.

mp changes from green

ke is not set if the engine
while the vehicle is coast-
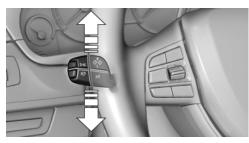tomatic Hold is deacti-

amp in Canadian models

control with you

control with you when
at children, for example,
king brake.◀

In the event of a failure or malfunction of the parking brake, secure the vehicle against rolling using a wheel chock, for example, when leaving it.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 606 497 - 03 11 490

Turn signal, high beams, headlamp flasher

Turn signal

Using turn signals

Press the lever beyond t

To switch off manually, p
sistance point.

Unusually rapid flashing
dicates that a turn signa

Triple turn signal ac

Press the lever to the re
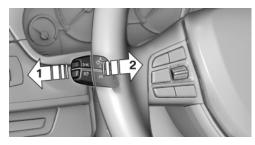
The turn signal flashes t

The function can be acti

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Triple turn signal"

Signaling briefly

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

High beams, headlamp flasher

▷ High beams, arrow 1.
▷ Headlamp flasher, arrow 2.

Washer/wiper system

ers on/off and brief

n the wipers if frozen
n the wipers if they are fro-
ld; otherwise, the wiper
ield wiper motor may be

Press the wiper levers up.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

▷ Normal wiping speed: press up once.

The wipers switch to intermittent operation when the vehicle is stationary.

▷ Fast wiping speed: press up twice or press once beyond the resistance point.

The wipers switch to normal speed when the vehicle is stationary.
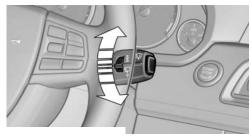
Switching off and brief wipe

Press the wiper levers down.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

▷ Brief wipe: press down once.

▷ To switch off normal wipe: press down once.

▷ To switch off fast wip

Rain sensor

The concept

The time between wipes
ically and depends on the

The sensor is located on t
in front of the interior rear

Activating/deactivati

Press the button on the wiper lever.

When activated, the wipers move over the windshield once.

The LED in the steering column stalk lights up.

⚠ **Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes**

Deactivate the rain sensor when passing through an automatic car wash; otherwise, damage could be caused by undesired wiper activation.◀

Rain sensor sensitivity

...ld, headlamps*

...sher fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

In addition, the headlamps are cleaned at regular intervals when the vehicle lights are switched on.

⚠ **Do not use the washer system at freezing temperatures**

Do not use the washers if there is any danger that the fluid will freeze on the windshield; otherwise, your vision could be obscured. For this reason, use antifreeze.

Avoid using the washer when the reservoir is empty; otherwise, you could damage the pump.◀

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

71

Windshield washer nozzles

The washer jets are automatically heated* whenever the ignition is switched on.

Fold-out position of the wipers

Required when changing the wiper blades or under frosty conditions, for example.

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Under frosty conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen onto the windshield.
3. Press the wiper lever up beyond the point of resistance and hold it for approx. 3 seconds, until the wiper remains in a nearly vertical position.

After the wipers are folde

system must be reactiva

⚠ Fold the wipers ba

Before switching t

wipers back down to the

the wipers may become

switched on.◄

1. Switch on the ignitio
2. Press the wiper leve
   move to their restinc
   for operation.

Washer fluid

General information

⚠ Antifreeze for washer fluid

Antifreeze is flammable. Therefore, keep it away from sources of ignition.

Only keep it in the closed original container and inaccessible to children.

Follow the instructions on the container.◄

Washer fluid reservoir

⚠ Adding washer fluid

Only add washer fluid when the engine is cool, and then close the cover completely to avoid contact between the washer fluid and hot engine parts.

Otherwise, there is the danger of fire and a risk to personal safety if the fluid is spilled.◄

e supplied from one reser-

required – with a washer

to the manufacturer's rec-

efore adding to maintain

o.

5 liters

nsmission with Steptronic

Transmission positions

D Drive, automatic position

Position for normal vehicle operation. All forward gears are available.

R is Reverse

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

N is Neutral

Use in automatic car washes, for example. The vehicle can roll.

When the ignition is switched off, refer to page 65, position P is engaged automatically.

P Park

Select only when the vehicle is stationary. The drive wheels are blocked.

P is engaged automatically:

▷ After the engine is switched off, if the car is in radio ready state, refer to page 65, or if the ignition is switched off, refer to page 65, and if position R or D is engaged.

▷ If the ignition is switched off and position N is engaged.

▷ If the safety belt is unbuckled, the driver's door is opened, and the brake pedal is not pressed while the veh
transmission position

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achie
performance. Press on th
the resistance point at the

Engaging the transm

▷ Transmission position
gaged if the engine is
pedal is pressed.

▷ With the vehicle static
brake pedal before sh
otherwise, the shift co
executed: shift lock.

⚠ Depress the brake until you start driving

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a driving position, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.◀

Engaging D, R and N

Briefly push the selector lever in the desired direction, beyond a resistance point if necessary.

After releasing the selector lever, it returns to its center position.

n to:

Press button P.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Sport program and manual mode M/S

Activating the sport program

Push the selector lever to the left out of transmission position D.

DS is displayed in the instrument cluster.

This position is recomm
ance-oriented driving st

Activating the M/S

Push the selector lever t
mission position D.

Push the selector lever f

Manual mode becomes
changed.

The engaged gear is disp
cluster, e.g., M1.

▷ To shift down: press
ward.

▷ To shift up: press th
ward.

The transmission only shifts up or down if the rpm and vehicle speed are appropriate. If the engine speed is too high, the transmission does not shift down.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

Ending the sport program/manual mode

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Displays in the instrument cluster

The transmission position is displayed, for instance, P.

Displays

Instrument cluster

At a glance

1 Fuel gauge

2 Speedometer

3 Indicator/warning lam

4 Tachometer

5 Oil temperature

Fuel gauge

The vehicle inclination may cause the display to vary.

Notes on refueling, refer to page 242.

Range

After the reserve range is reached:

▷ A Check Control message is displayed briefly.

▷ The remaining range is shown on the computer.

▷ When a dynamic driving style is used, such as when corners are taken rapidly, engine functions are not ensured.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

⚠ Refuel promptly

Refuel no later than at a range 30 miles/ 50 km, or engine functions are not ensured and damage may occur.◀

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

75

Displaying the cruising range

1. "Settings"
2. "Info display"
3. "Additional indicators"

The range is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Tachometer

Always avoid engine spe[...] field. In this range, the fu[...] to protect the engine.
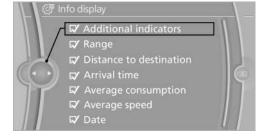
Engine oil temperat[...]

▷ Cold engine: the pointer is at the low temperature end. Drive at moderate engine and vehicle speeds.

▷ Normal operating temperature: the pointer is in the middle or in the left half of the temperature display.

▷ Hot engine: the pointer is at the high temperature end. A Check Control message is displayed in addition.

Coolant temperature

Should the coolant, and with it the engine, become too hot, a Check Control message is displayed.

Check the coolant level, refer to page .

External temperature

External temperature warning

If the display drops to +37 °F/ +3 °C, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is the increased danger of ice.

[...]tures above +37 °F/+3 °C, [...]ce on roads.

[...]ully on bridges and shady [...] avoid the increased dan-

[...]umption

[...]s the current fuel con[...]on. You can check [...]r you are currently driving [...]ficient and environmen[...]ndly manner.

[...]rent fuel consumption

1. "Settings"
2. "Info display"
3. "Additional indicators"

The bar display for the current fuel consumption is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Energy recovery

The energy of motion of the vehicle is converted to electrical energy while coasting. The vehicle battery is partially charged and fuel consumption can be lowered.

Odometer and trip odometer

▷ Odometer, arrow 1.

▷ Trip odometer, arrow 2.

Display/reset miles

Press the k

▷ When t off, the ature a played.

▷ When the ignition is s odometer is reset.

Time

The time is tom of the

Setting the

Date

The date is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Setting the date and date format,

Selection lists in the instrument cluster

The concept

The following can be operated using the buttons and the thumbwheel on the steering wheel:

ce.

ə*.

ice activation system*.

d creating the

Press a button on the right side of the steering wheel or turn the thumbwheel to activate the required list.

Create the setting using the thumbwheel.

Computer

Indication in the info display

The information from the computer is shown in the Info display in the instrument cluster.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

77

Calling up information on the info display

Press the computer button on the turn signal lever.

Information is displayed on the info display of the instrument cluster.

Information at a glan...

Repeatedly pressing the ...
nal lever calls up the follo...
info display:

▷ Range.

▷ Average fuel consum...

▷ Average speed.

▷ Date*.

▷ Time of arrival*
When destination gu...
the navigation syste...

▷ Distance to destinat...
When destination gu...
the navigation syste....

▷ Arrow view of navigation system*
When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.

Adjusting the info display

You can select what information from the computer is to be displayed on the info display of the instrument cluster.

1. "Settings"

2. "Info display"

3. Select the desired displays.

Information in detail

Range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel.

... on your driving style over ...m. If there is only enough ...5 miles/80 km, the color ...s.

...umption

...he period during which the

...sumption is calculated on ...stances.

...vehicle is parked with the ...t enter into the calculation.

Resetting average values

Press and hold the computer button on the turn signal lever.

Distance to destination*

The distance remaining to the destination is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system* before the trip is started.

The distance to the destination is adopted automatically.

Time of arrival*

The estimated time of arrival is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system* before the trip is started.

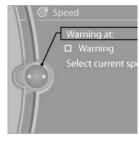The time must be correctly set.

Speed limit

Display of a speed limit which, when reached, should cause a warning to be issued.

Renewed warning if the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit once by at least 3 mph/ 5 km/h.

Displaying, setting or changing the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning at:"

4. Turn the controller un   displayed.
5. Press the controller.

The speed limit is stored.

Activating/deactivating the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning"
4. Press the controller.

Applying your current speed as the limit

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"

3. "Select current speed"
4. Press the controller.

   The current vehicle speed is stored as the limit.

Resetting values

The average fuel consumption and average speed can be reset.

Press and hold the computer button on the turn signal lever.

Trip computer

There are two types of computer.

▷ "Onboard info": the values can be reset as often as necessary.

                                        e values provide an over-
                                        trip.

                              :omputer

                              are reset.

                              et": all values are reset
                               er the vehicle comes to a

Display on the Control Display

Display the computer or trip computer on the Control Display.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Onboard info" or "Trip computer"

At a glance
Controls
Driving tips
Navigation
Entertainment
Communication
Mobility
Reference

79

Resetting the fuel consumption or speed

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Onboard info"
3. "Cons." or "Speed"

4. "Yes"

Settings on the Display

Time

Setting the time zone

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Time zone"
4. Select the desired ti

The time zone is stored.

Setting the time

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Time:"

4. Turn the controller until the desired hours are displayed.
5. Press the controller.
6. Turn the controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
7. Press the controller.

The time is stored.

Setting the time format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.

The time format is stored.

r until the desired day is

er.

ry settings for the month

ormat

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.

The date format is stored.

Language

Setting the language

To set the language on the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Language:"

4. Select the desired lan...

The setting is stored for t[he remote control cur]rently in use.

Setting the voice dia[log]

Voice dialog for the voice [...] refer to page 26.

Units of measure

Setting the units of m[easure]

To set the units for fuel c[onsumption, dis]tance and temperature:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. Select the desired menu item.

4. Select the desired unit.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Brightness

Setting the brightness

To set the brightness of the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Brightness"

[...] until the desired bright[ness...]

[...].

[...] the remote control cur-

[...] conditions, the bright[ness...] clearly visible.

[Service requir]ements

Display

The driving distance or the time to the next service is displayed briefly after the ignition is switched on.

The current service require-

ments can be read out from the remote control by the service specialist.

Data regarding the maintenance status or legally mandated inspections of the vehicle are automatically transmitted to your service center before a service due date, Automatic Service Request, refer to page 234.

At a glance
Controls
Driving tips
Navigation
Entertainment
Communication
Mobility
Reference

81

Detailed information on service requirements

More information on the scope of service required can be displayed on the Control Display.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⬡ "Service required"

   Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.
4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
OK	No servic⋯
⚠	The dead⋯ gally ma⋯ approach⋯ service a⋯
⚠	The serv⋯ ready pa⋯

Entering appointme⋯

Enter the dates for the n⋯

Ensure that the vehicle ⋯ correctly.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⬡ "Service required"
4. "§ Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Create the settings.
7. Confirm.

   The entered date is stored.

Automatic Service Request*

Data regarding the maintenance status or legally mandated inspections of the vehicle are auto-

matically transmitted to your service center before a service due date.

You can check when your service center was notified.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Last Service Request"

Check Control

The concept

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in ⋯s.

⋯sage is displayed as a ⋯tor or warning lamps and ⋯nstrument cluster and in ⋯.

⋯ signal may be output and ⋯ppear on the Control Dis-

⋯ lamps

The indicator and warning lamps can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lamps are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on.

Text messages

Text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control

message and the meaning of the indicator and warning lamps.

Supplementary text messages

Addition information, such as on the cause of a fault or the required action, can be called up via Check Control. The supplementary text of urgent messages is displayed automatically.

It is shown on the Control Display.

Symbols

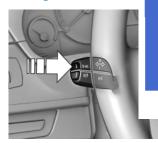Depending on the Check Control message, the following functions can be selected.

▷ 📖 "Owner's Manual"

Display additional information about the Check Control messa
owner's manual.

▷ BMW "Service request"

Contact the service p

▷ 🅧 "Roadside Assista

Contact Roadside As:

Hiding Check Contro

Press the computer button on the turn signal lever.

▷ Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

These messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.

▷ Other Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds.

They are stored and can be displayed again later.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control"
4. Select the text message.

Messages after trip completion

Malfunctions indicated during a trip are displayed again after the ignition is switched off.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

83

Lamps

At a glance

1 Rear fog lamps*

2 Front fog lamps*

3 Automatic headlamp control* / high-beam lamps / daytime runn...

4 Lamps off / daytime...

5 Parking lamps / dayt...

6 Low beams / welcor... assistant*

7 Instrument lighting

Parking lamps/ headlamp cont...

Parking lamps

Switch position ⊒DŒ : ...
up on all sides, e.g., for parking.

Do not use the parking lamps for extended periods; otherwise, the battery may become discharged and it would then be impossible to start the engine.

When parking, it is preferable to switch on the one-sided roadside parking lamps, refer to page 85.

Low beams

Switch position 🔅D with the ignition switched on: the low beams light up.

Welcome lamps

When parking the vehicle, leave the switch in position 🔅D or 🔅℧ : the parking and interior lamps light up briefly when the vehicle is unlocked.

Activating/deactivating

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Welcome light"

... or the remote control cur-

...sy delay feature

...t for a short while after the ...:, if the lamps are switched ... flasher is switched on.

...on

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Pathway light.: s"

4. Set the duration.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Automatic headlamp control

Switch position ⫞⫟ : the low beams are switched on and off automatically, e.g., in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation. The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

The low beams always stay on when the fog lamps are switched on.

⚠️ Personal responsibility

The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining when the l
switched on in response
conditions.

For example, the sensors
fog or hazy weather. To a
should always switch on th
der these conditions.◄

Daytime running ligh

With the ignition switched
ning lights light up in posi
After the ignition is switch
lamps light up in position

Activating/deactivati

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Daytime running lamps"

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Roadside parking lamps

The vehicle can be illuminated on one side.

Switching on

With the ignition switched off, press the lever either up or down past the resistance point for

o the resistance point in

control*

a variable headlamp
bles dynamic illumina-

ring angle and other pa-
the headlamp follows

In tight curves, e.g., on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional, corner-illuminating lamp is switched on that lights up the inside of the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

Controls

Activating

Switch position ⫞⫟ with the ignition switched on.

The turning lamps are automatically switched on depending on the steering angle or the use of turn signals.

85

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the adaptive light control directs light towards the front passenger side when the vehicle is at a standstill.

When driving in reverse, only the turning lamp is active.

Self-leveling headlights

The self-leveling headlights feature adapts the light distribution to the contours of the road.

The light distribution is lowered on hilltops to avoid blinding oncoming traffic and tilted in depressions to increase visibility.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

Adaptive light control is
failed. Have the system c
sible.

High-beam Ass

The concept

When the low beams are
tem automatically switc
and off. The procedure i
on the front of the interi
assistant ensures that th
switched on whenever t
lows. The driver can inte
switch the high beams o

Activating the High-beam Assistant

1. Turn the light switch to 🔆D or 🔆 .
2. Press the button on the turn signal lever, arrow.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

When the lights are switched on, the high beams are switched on and off automatically.

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to adequate illumination, e.g., in towns and cities.

Switching the high beams on and off manually

rrow 1.

adlamp flasher, arrow 2.

-beam Assistant, press
signal lever.

sibility

assistant cannot serve as
iver's personal judgment
h beams. Therefore, man-
gh beams in situations
where this is required to avoid a safety risk.◄

The system is not fully functional in situations such as the following, and driver intervention may be necessary:

▷ In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.

▷ In detecting poorly-lit road users, such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; and at animal crossings.

▷ In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in cross traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on freeways.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

▷ In poorly-lit towns and cities and in the presence of highly reflective signs.

▷ At low speeds.

▷ When the windshield in front of the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Camera

The camera is located on ͏
rearview mirror.

Keep the area in front of t͏
mirror clear.

Fog lamps

Front fog lamps*

The parking lamps or low ͏
switched on.

Press the button ͏
lamp lights up.

If the automatic headlamp control, refer to page 85, is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the front fog lamps.

Instrument lighting

Adjusting

The parking lamps or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Adjust the brightness using the thumbwheel.

Interior lamps

General information

The interior lamps, footwell lamps, entry lamps and courtesy lamps are controlled automatically.

The brightness of some of these lamps is influenced by the thumbwheel for the instrument lighting.

...ior lamps on and off

͏n.

͏tly: press the button for

͏ess the button.

͏n.

Reading lamps are located at the front and rear next to the interior lamps.

Safety

Airbags

1 Front airbag, driver

2 Front airbag, front p

3 Head airbag

Front airbags

Front airbags help prote orts the legs in a frontal
passenger by respondir
which safety belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint.

Side airbags

In a lateral impact, the side airbag supports the
side of the body in the chest and lap area.

In a lateral impact, the side airbag supports the
side of the body in the chest, lap, and head area.

Head airbags

In a lateral impact, the head airbag supports the
head.

Protective action

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents or rear-end
collisions.

⚠️ Information on how to ensure the optimal
protective effect of the airbags

▷ Keep at a distance from the airbags.

▷ Always grasp the steering wheel on the
steering wheel rim, holding your hands at
the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep
the danger of injury to your hands or arms as
low as possible if the airbag is triggered.

▷ There should be no people, animals, or objects between an airbag and a person.

▷ Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.

▷ Keep the dashboard and window on the front passenger side clear, i.e., do not cover with adhesive labels or coverings, and do not attach holders such as for navigation instruments and mobile phones.

▷ Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the footwell; otherwise, leg injuries can occur if the front airbag is triggered.

▷ Do not place slip covers, seat cushions or other objects on the front passenger seat that are not approved specifically for seats with integrated side a

▷ Do not hang pieces of ets, over the backrest

▷ Make sure that occup away from the side ai against the head airba can occur if the airbag

▷ Do not remove the air

▷ Do not remove the ste

▷ Do not apply adhesive bag cover panels, cov them in any way.

▷ Never modify either th nents or the wiring in t also applies to steering, the dashboard, the seats, the roof pillars and the sides of the headliner.◄

Even when all instructions are followed closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive individuals.

⚠️ In the case of a malfunction, deactivation and after triggering of the airbags

Do not touch the individual components immediately after the system has been triggered; otherwise, there is the danger of burns.

Only have the airbags checked, repaired or dismantled and the airbag generator scrapped by your service center or a workshop that has the necessary authorization for handling explosives.

Non-professional attempts to service the system could lead to failure in an emergency or undesired triggering of the airbag, either of which could result in injury.◄

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Functional readiness of the airbag system

When the ignition is switch on, the warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the operation of the entire airbag system

functioning

, the warning lamp does

ights up continuously.

nalfunction, have the air-ked immediately

ction, have the airbag diately; otherwise, there does not function as ex- n accident despite cor- the accident.◄

Automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags

The system determines whether the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the resistance of the human body.

The front, knee, and side airbag on the front passenger side are activated or deactivated accordingly.

⚠️ Leave feet in the footwell

Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the footwell; otherwise, the front passenger airbags may not function properly.◄

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

89

⚠ Child restraint fixing system in the front passenger seat

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, see the safety notes and instructions under Children on the front passenger seat.◄

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes ___

If it is not possible to act ___ the person sit in the rear ___

To make sure that the o ___ can be evaluated correc ___

▷ Do not attach covers ___ other items to the fr ___ less they are specifi ___ the manufacturer of ___

▷ Do not place any obj ___ senger seat.

▷ Do not place objects ___ could press against ___

Indicator lamp for th ___ airbags

The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags indicates the operating state of the front passenger airbags.

The lamp indicates whether the airbags are activated or deactivated.

▷ The indicator lamp lights up when a child who is properly seated in a child restraint fixing system intended for that purpose is detected on the seat or the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.

▷ The indicator lamp does not light up when, for example, a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

The system generally detects children seated in a child seat, especially in the child seats that were required by NHTSA when the vehicle was ___ installing a child seat, make ___ lamp for the front pas- ___ up. This indicates that the ___ etected and the front pas- ___ t activated.

___ iver's and front

___ ch the driver's and front ___ triggered depends on the ___ s and front passenger ___

___ acy of this function over ___ te the front seats when a ___ ge appears on the Control ___

Calibrating the front seats

A corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

1. Move the respective seat forward all the way.

2. Move the respective seat forward again. It moves forward briefly.

3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the message on the Control Display disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

90

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

⚠ Unobstructed area of movement

Ensure that the area of movement of the seats is unobstructed to avoid personal injury or damage to objects.◀

Tire Pressure Monitor TPM*

The concept

The tire inflation pressure is measured in the four mounted tires. The system notifies you if there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires.

Functional requireme

The system must have be
flation pressure was corre
signaling of a flat tire is no
wheels with TPM electro
system will operate prope
after each correction of th
sure and after every tire o

System limits

⚠ Sudden tire damage

Sudden serious tire
external influences canno
vance.◀

The system does not operate correctly if it has not been reset. For example, a flat tire may be indicated despite correct tire inflation pressures.

The system is inactive and cannot indicate a flat tire:

▷ For a mounted wheel without TPM electronics.

▷ When the TPM is disturbed by other systems or devices with the same radio frequency.

Status display

The current status of the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the TPM is active.

1. "Vehicle Info"

2. "Vehicle status"

3. (!) "Tire Pressure Monitor - TPM"

The status is displayed.

Status display

The tire and system status is indicated by the color of the tires.

A change in the tire inflation pressure during driving is taken into account.

essary if this is indicated

ure is equal to the target

in inflation pressure in

rop in inflation pressure

t reset after a wheel
arns based on the inflation pressures initialized last.

▷ A flat tire in one or more tires while the system is being reset.

Wheels, gray

The system cannot detect a flat tire. Reasons for this may be:

▷ TPM is being reset.

▷ Disturbance by systems or devices with the same radio frequency.

▷ Malfunction.

For Canadian models: additional information

The status display additionally shows the current tire inflation pressures and tire temperatures.

When correcting the tire inflation pressures, note the following:

The tire pressure increases as the tire temperature increases.

Therefore, only correct the tire inflation pressure when the tire is at the ambient temperature. Compare the displayed tire temperature with the external temperature in the instrument cluster.

Resetting the system

Reset the system after e~~~~ tire inflation pressure an~~~~ wheel change.

1. "Vehicle Info"

2. "Vehicle status"

3. ⟨!⟩_INIT "Reset"

4. Start the engine - do~~~~

5. Reset the tire press~~~~

6. Drive away.

The tires are shown in g~~~~ TPM..." is displayed.

After driving for a few m~~~~ tion pressures are applie~~~~ setting process is completed automatically during driving. The tires are shown in green and "TPM active" is shown on the Control Display.

The trip can be interrupted at any time. If you drive away again, the process resumes automatically.

If a flat tire is detected during a reset, all tires are displayed in yellow.

Low tire pressure message

The yellow warning lamp lights up. A Check Control message is displayed.

  ▷ There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

  ▷ The system was not reset after a wheel change and thus warns based on the inflation pressures initialized last.

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with regular tires* or run-flat tires*.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 251, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire sidewall.

When a low inflation pressure is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on if necessary.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

~~~~ged tire.

~~~~ng the air pressure in all

~~~~ pressure in all four tires is ~~~~ressure Monitor may not ~~~~ed. In this case, initialize

~~~~is not possible, please ~~~~e center.

~~~~, e.g., the Mobility System, ~~~~TPM wheel electronics. In ~~~~e electronics checked at the next opportunity and have them replaced if necessary.

Run-flat tires*

You can continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

 Do not continue driving without run-flat tires

Do not continue driving if the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires; continued driving may result in serious accidents.◀

Continued driving with a flat tire

If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the air pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:

The possible driving distance after a loss of tire inflation pressure depend[...] the [...] and the driving style and [...]

For a vehicle containing a [...] possible driving distance [...] 80 km.

When the vehicle is driven [...] its handling characteristic[...] duced lane stability durin[...] braking distance, and alte[...] properties. Adjust your dr[...] ingly. Avoid abrupt steerin[...] ing over obstacles, e.g., c[...]

Because the possible driv[...] on how the vehicle is use[...] actual distance may be sr[...] pending on the driving sp[...] external temperature, cargo load, etc.

⚠ Continued driving with a flat tire

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

A loss of tire inflation pressure results in a change in the handling characteristics, e.g., reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and altered self-steering properties.◀

⚠ Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of the tire. Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident. Do not continue driving, and contact your service center.◀

Message when the system was not reset

A Check Control message is displayed.

The system detected a wheel change but was not reset.

Warnings regarding the current tire inflation pressure are not reliable.

Check the tire inflation pressure and reset the system.

Malfunction

The yellow warning lamp flashes and [...] ontinuously. A Check [...]e is displayed. No flat [...]

[...] situations:

[...]M electronics is fitted: [...]ter check it if necessary.

[...]he system checked by [...].

[...]lly reset. Reset the sys-

[...]tems or devices with the [...]cy: after leaving the area [...]he system automatically [...]ain.

Declaration according to NHTSA/FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one

or more of your tires is significantly under-in-flated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a sub-stitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating prop-erly. The TPMS malfunc

bined with the low tire p

the system detects a ma

flash for approximately c

main continuously illumi

will continue upon subse

as long as the malfunctic

function indicator is illum

not be able to detect or

as intended. TPMS malf

a variety of reasons, incl

replacement or alternate

vehicle that prevent the

properly. Always check

telltale after replacing or

wheels on your vehicle t

placement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Lane departure warning*

The concept

This system issues a warning at speeds above approx. 40 mph/65 km/h if the vehicle is about to leave the lane on roads with lane markings.

The steering wheel begins vibrating gently.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set before leaving the lane.

Switching on/off

 Press the button.

▷ On: the LED lights up.

▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The system can issue warnings at speeds above n/h.

the remote control cur-

e system is activated.

▷ Arrows, arrow 2: at least one lane marking was detected and warnings can be issued.

Issued warning

If you leave the lane and if a lane marking has been detected, the steering wheel begins vi-brating.

If the turn signal is set before changing the lane, a warning is not issued.

End of warning

The warning ends:

▷ Automatically after approx. 3 seconds.

▷ When returning to your own lane.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

▷ When braking hard.

▷ When using the turn signal.

System limits

⚠ Personal responsibility

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the course of the road and the traffic situation.

In the event of a warning, do not jerk the steering wheel, as you may lose control of the vehicle.◀

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

▷ In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.

▷ In the event of worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple in construction areas.

▷ When lane markings a ice, dirt or water.

▷ In tight curves or on n

▷ When the lane markin jects.

▷ When driving very clo front of you.

▷ When driving toward l

▷ When the windshield rearview mirror is fog ered with stickers, etc

Malfunctions

Steering wheel vibration

Frequent activation of the steering wheel vibration causes the system to overheat.

This causes the lane departure warning to become deactivated.

Let the system cool and reactivate it by pressing the button.

Camera

The camera is located on the front of the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the area in front of the interior rearview mirror clear.

pot Detection*

w the rear bumper mon- next to the vehicle at 30 mph/50 km/h.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in the blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind on the adjacent lane, arrow 2.

The lamp in the exterior mirror housing lights up dimly.

Before you change lanes after setting the turn signal, the system issues a warning in the situations described above.

The lamp in the housing of the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

Switching on/off

Press the button.

▷ On: the LED lights up.

▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The system can issue warnings at speeds above approx. 30 mph/50 km/h

The state is stored for th
rently in use.

Display

Information stage

The dimmed lamp in the mirror housing indicates when there are vehicles in the blind spot or approaching from behind.

Warning

If the turn signal is set while a vehicle is in the critical zone, the steering wheel vibrates briefly and the lamp in the mirror housing flashes brightly.

The warning stops when the turn signal is switched off, or the other vehicle leaves the critical zone.

System limits

⚠ Personal responsibility

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation.

In the event of a warning, do not jerk the steering wheel, as you may lose control over the vehicle.◄

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

▷ When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.

▷ In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.

▷ In tight curves or on narrow lanes.

oration

the steering wheel vibra-
to overheat.

ind Spot Detection to be-

d reactivate it by pressing

The radar sensors are located under the rear bumper.

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

▷ Dirty or icy bumper.

▷ Stickers on the bumper.

A Check Control message is displayed when the system is not fully functional.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:

▷ NBG009014A.

Compliance statement:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

▷ This device may not cause harmful interference, and

▷ this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired oper

Any unauthorized modific these devices could void operate this equipment.

Brake force disp

The concept

▷ During normal brake application, the outer brake lamps light up.

▷ During heavy brake application, the inner brake lamps light up in addition.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Driving stability control systems

Antilock Brake System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle remains steerable even during full brake applications, thus increasing active safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

Brake assistant

When you apply the bra[...]
automatically produces [...]
force boost. It thus helps [...]
possible braking distanc[...]
This system utilizes all o[...]
by ABS.

Do not reduce the press[...]
for the duration of the fu[...]

Adaptive brake[...]

In combination with the [...]
this system ensures tha[...]
even more rapidly when [...]
tions. Refer also to Colli[...]
page 110.

Drive-off assistant

This system supports driving away on gradients. The parking brake is not required.

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive away without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

Depending on the vehicle load, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

⚠️ Driving off without delay

After releasing the foot brake, start driving without delay, since the drive-off assistant will not hold the vehicle in place for more than approx. 2 seconds and the vehicle will begin rolling back.◀

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

The concept

[...] loss in the driving wheels [...]d accelerating.

[...] unstable vehicle condi[...]g or nose-diving. Subject [...]C helps to keep the vehicle [...] reducing engine speed [...]s at individual wheels.

[...]ing style to the situation

[...]driving style is always the [...]river.

[...]annot be repealed, even

[...]uce the additional safety [...] risky manner.◀

Deactivating DSC: DSC OFF

DSC can be deactivated. To do this, activate the DSC OFF program.

This is performed via the Dynamic Driving Control, refer to page 102.

Indicator/warning lamps

The indicator lamp flashes: DSC controls the drive forces and brake forces.

The indicator lamp lights up: DSC has failed.

DTC Dynamic Traction Control

The concept

The DTC system is a version of the DSC in which forward momentum is optimized.

The system ensures maximum forward momentum on special road conditions, e.g., unplowed snowy roads, but driving stability is limited.

It is therefore necessary to drive with appropriate caution.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:

▷ When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.

▷ When rocking the veh— deep snow or on loos—

▷ When driving with sn—

Deactivating/activati— Traction Control

The system can be deacti— TRACTION and SPORT+— namic Driving Control, ref—

xDrive*

xDrive is the all-wheel-dri— hicle. Concerted action by— further optimize traction a— The xDrive all-wheel-drive system variably distributes the drive forces to the front and rear axles as demanded by the driving situation and road surface.

HDC Hill Descent Control*

The concept

HDC is a downhill driving assistant that automatically controls vehicle speed on steep downhill gradients. Without requiring brake application, the vehicle moves at slightly more than twice walking speed.

You can activate the Hill Descent Control at speeds below approx. 22 mph/35 km/h. When driving downhill, the vehicle reduces its speed to approx. twice walking speed and then keeps its speed constant.

While you are actively braking, the system is on standby. The system does not brake the vehicle during this time.

Increasing or decreasing vehicle speed

You can specify your desired speed in the range from approx. 4 mph/6 km/h to approx. 15 mph/25 km/h using the rocker switch of the cruise control on the steering wheel. You can change the vehicle speed by pressing on the accelerator lightly.

— switch to the point of
— ed increases gradually.

— switch past the point of
— ed increases while the
— ssed.

— ker switch to the point of resistance: the speed decreases gradually.

▷ Press down the rocker switch past the point of resistance: when driving forward, the speed decreases to approx. 6 mph/10 km/h; when reversing, the speed decreases to approx. 4 mph/6 km/h.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

99

Activating HDC

Press the button; the LED above the button lights up.

Deactivating HDC

Press the button again and the LED goes out. HDC is autom
above approx. 37 mph/6

Display in the instru

The selec
in the spe

▷ Green
brakir

▷ Orang
stand

Malfunction

A message is displayed
ter. HDC is not available
brake temperatures.

Adaptive Drive*

The concept

Adaptive Drive* includes the following systems:

▷ Dynamic Drive, refer to page 100
▷ Dynamic Damping Control, refer to page 100

The system increases driving stability and driving comfort.

Dynamic Drive*

The concept

Dynamic Drive reduces the lateral inclination of the vehicle that occurs during rapid driving in curves or during quick evasive maneuvers.

Driving stability and driving comfort are increased under all driving conditions. The system utilizes active stabilizer bars on the front and rear axles that react immediately to all driving situations.

Programs

The system offers two different programs.

The programs can be selected via Dynamic Driv-

ter driving agility.

ing for optimal comfort.

ping Control*

undesirable vehicle mo-
amic driving style or trav-
surfaces.

s driving dynamics and comfort as required for the road surface and driving style.

Programs

The system offers three different programs.

The programs can be selected via Dynamic Driving Control, refer to page 102.

SPORT

Consistently sporty control of the shock absorbers for greater driving agility.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

NORMAL

Balanced tuning between the COMFORT and SPORT programs.

COMFORT

Comfort-oriented tuning of the shock absorbers for optimal traveling comfort.

Integral Active Steering*

The concept

Integral Active Steering is a combination of Active Steering and rear axle steering.

Active Steering varies the steering angle of the wheels in relation to the s_____
ment as a function of the

At speeds up to approx. 3
in curves, the steering an
steering becomes more c

The rear axle steering act
verability by turning the re
direction opposite to the f

At higher speeds, the ste
ingly reduced.

The rear wheels are turne
the front wheels.

In critical situations, Integr
specifically steer the front
stabilize the vehicle before
e.g., when braking where
on the left and right sides of the vehicle.

Initializing

In rare cases, it may become necessary to initialize the Integral Active Steering.

The warning lamp lights up. A Check Control message is displayed.

1. With the engine running, turn the steering wheel all the way to the left and right several times in a uniform manner until the warning lamp disappears.

2. Have the system checked if the warning lamp does not go out after moving the steer-

ing wheel approx. 6 times or if the steering wheel is at an angle.

Using snow chains

Ensure that the rear axle steering is deactivated when using snow chains, refer to page 252.

Programs

The system offers two different programs.

SPORT

Consistently sporty tuning of the Integral Active Steering for greater driving agility.

Integral Active Steering
mfort.

ction, the steering wheel
while the vehicle re-
y to steering wheel
er speed range.
intervention may be de-

l drive defensively.
ed.

Self-leveling suspension*

The concept

The self-leveling suspension keeps the vehicle height and ground clearance constant. The height of the vehicle at the rear axle is maintained at a predefined level under all load conditions.

The system ensures consistent comfort by keeping spring travel constant in all driving situations.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed. A malfunction has occurred in the self-leveling suspension. Vehicle handling may be altered and driving comfort may be noticeably reduced. Visit your nearest service center.

Dynamic Driving Control*

The concept

Dynamic Driving Control can be used to adjust the driving dynamics of the vehicle. Several programs are available for this purpose; they can be activated using the two Dynamic Driving Control buttons.

Operating the progr_____ lamps

Press the button

For Dynamic Damper C_____
is labeled with COMFO____

Automatic program change

The system automatically switches to NORMAL in the following situations:

▷ Failure of Integral Active Steering*.

▷ Failure of Dynamic Damping Control*.

▷ The vehicle has a flat tire.

DSC OFF

Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in bends.

Stabilizing interventions by the Integral Active Steering* system are only performed by the rear axle steering.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Activating DSC OFF

Press and hold the button, but not longer than approx. 10 seconds, until the indicator lamp for the DSC lights up in the instrument cluster and DSC OFF is displayed in the tachometer.

The DSC system is switched off.

Deactivating DSC OFF

Press the button.

DSC OFF and the DSC indicator lamp go out.

_____ lamps

_____ivated, DSC OFF is dis-_____eter.

_____lamp lights up: DSC OFF

_____loose road surfaces. DTC _____ntrol is switched on. Driv-_____during acceleration and _____.

____TION

_____tton.

TRACTION is displayed in the tachometer.

The DSC indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

Deactivating TRACTION

Press the button again.

TRACTION and the DSC indicator lamp go out.

Indicator/warning lamps

When TRACTION is activated, TRACTION is displayed in the tachometer.

102

The indicator lamp lights up: TRACTION is activated.

SPORT+

Sporty driving with optimized chassis and suspension during limited driving stabilization.

Dynamic Traction Control is switched on.

The driver handles several of the stabilization tasks.

Activating SPORT+

Press the button repeatedly until SPORT+ appears in the tachometer and the DSC indicator lamp lights up in the instrument cluster.

Indicator/warning lamp

SPORT+ is displayed in t

The indicator lamp
namic Traction Co

SPORT

Consistently sporty tuning
greater driving agility with
bilization.

The program can be conf
specifications.

The configuration is store
trol currently in use.

Activating SPORT

Press the button repeatedly until SPORT appears in the tachometer.

Configuring SPORT

When the display is activated on the Control Display, refer to page 104, the sport program can be set to individual specifications.

After the sport program is activated, select "Configure SPORT mode" on the displayed panel and configure the program.

Optionally, the sport program can be configured before it is activated:

1. "Settings"
2. "SPORT mode"

3. Configure the program.

This configuration is retrieved when the sport program is activated.

ith maximum driving sta-

L

on repeatedly until the
ny in the tachometer

e system automatically
AL program, automatic
to page 102.

g of the shock absorbers
mfort with maximum
driving stabilization.

Activating COMFORT

Press the button repeatedly until COMFORT appears in the tachometer.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Selected program

The selected program is displayed in the tachometer.

103

Program selection

Pressing the button displays a list of the selectable programs.

Display on the Control Display

Program changes can be displayed briefly on the Control Display.

To do so, make the follo

1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Display driving sett

Driving comfort

Active Cruise Control with Stop & Go function, ACC*

The concept

This system can be used to select a desired speed that the vehicle will maintain automatically on clear roads.

To the extent possible, the system automatically adjusts the speed to a slower vehicle ahead of you.

The distance that the vehicle maintains to the vehicle ahead of you can be varied.

For safety reasons, it dep

To maintain a certain dist
tomatically decelerates, a
lightly, or accelerates aga
begins moving faster.

If the vehicle ahead of yo
system is able to detect t
system limits. If the vehicl
away again from a halt, yo
accelerate if operated acc

Even if some time passes
drives away again, the BM
erated automatically and s

As soon as the road is clea
desired speed.

The speed is also maintained on downhill gradients, but may not be maintained on uphill slopes if engine power is insufficient.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Buttons at a glance

1 System on/off, interrupt
2 Resume speed

nge speed

d interrupting

on on the steering wheel.

he instrument cluster
g in the speedometer is
d.

sed.

Switching off

⚠️ Deactivated or interrupted system

If the system is deactivated or interrupted, actively intervene by braking and, if necessary, with evasive maneuvers; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring. ◄

If switching off the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

▮ I/O ▮ Press the button.

▷ If active: press twice.
▷ If interrupted: press once.

105

The displays go out. The stored desired speed and distance are deleted.

Interrupting

| I/0 | When active, press the button.

If interrupting the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

The system is automatically interrupted if:

▷ The brakes are applied.

▷ The clutch pedal is depressed.

▷ Transmission position D is disengaged.

▷ DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated or DSC is deactivated.

▷ DSC is actively cont...

▷ The safety belt and ... opened when the ve...

▷ The system has not ... extended period, e.g... tle traffic without roa...

▷ Radar sensor is soile...

Maintaining/storing...

| SET | Press the butto...

When the system is swi... speed is maintained and ... speed.

It is displayed in the spe... displayed in the instrument cluster. Displays in the instrument cluster, refer to page 107.

When cruise control is maintained or stored, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Changing, maintaining, and storing the speed

The rocker switch can be pressed while the system is interrupted to maintain and store the current speed. DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Adapting the desired speed

⚠ Adapt the desired speed to the road conditions and be ready to brake at all times; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◀

Speed differences

⚠ Great speed differences with vehicles driving ahead of you, e.g., when rapidly approaching a truck or when another vehicle swerves into your own lane, cannot be compensated for by the system.◀

...ch up or down repeatedly ...d is set.

...d speed is stored and the ...ored speed if the road is

...er switch is pressed to the ...e, the desired speed in-...ses by approx. 1 mph/

...ker switch is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h. max. adjustable speed: 110 mph/180 km/h.

Hold the rocker switch in position to repeat the action.

Distance

Selecting a distance

⚠ Adjust the distance according to the traffic and weather conditions; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring. Maintain the prescribed safety distance.◀

Reduce distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The selected distance, refer to page 108, is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Increase distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The selected distance, refer to page 108, is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Calling up the desired speed and distance

While driving

Press the button ⬚ switched on.

In the following cases, the ⬚ deleted and cannot be ca⬚

▷ When the system is s⬚

▷ When the ignition is s⬚

While standing

⚠ Before leaving the v⬚ against rolling.

Before leaving the vehicle⬚ ning, engage position P o⬚ mission and apply the par⬚ the vehicle may begin to r⬚

The system brought the vehicle to a complete standstill.

▷ Green mark in the speedometer during a brief idle phase:

The vehicle ahead of you drives away while the mark is green: your vehicle accelerates without anything having to be done.

▷ Switch to orange of the mark in the speedometer after approx. 2 sec.:

The vehicle ahead of you drives away, while the mark is orange: in order to accelerate, briefly press the accelerator or press the RES button or SET button.

Rolling bars in the distance indicator mean that the vehicle ahead of you has driven off.

You actively braked your vehicle to a halt by pressing on the brake pedal and it is standing behind another vehicle:

1. RES Press the button to call up a stored desired speed.

2. Release the brake pedal.

3. Press on the accelerator briefly, or press the RES button or the rocker switch when the vehicle ahead of you drives away.

Displays in the instrument cluster

⬚speed

⬚ahead of you

Marking in the speedometer

▷ The marking lights up in green: the system is active.

▷ The marking lights up in orange: the system has been interrupted.

▷ The marking does not light up: the system is switched off.

Brief status display

Selected desired speed.

If --- appears briefly on the display for Check Control messages, it is possible that the system

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

requirements for operation are currently not met.

Distance to vehicle ahead of you

The selected distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you is shown.

Distance display	
	Distance 1
	Distance 2
	Distance 3
	Distance 4
	This value is se ... switched on.
	The system has ... distance contro ... cause the accel ... pressed; a vehi ...
	Distance contro ... cause the accel ... pressed; a vehi ...

Rolling bars: the detect ... away.

Indicator/warning lamps

⚠ Personal responsibility

The indicator and warning lamps do not relieve the driver of the responsibility to adapt his or her desired driving speed and style to the traffic conditions.◀

The vehicle symbol lights up in orange:

A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

The vehicle symbol flashes orange:

The conditions are not adequate for operating the system.

The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively assume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator.

The vehicle symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds:

You are requested to intervene by braking or making an evasive maneuver.

System limits

Speed range

Best results are achieved when using the system on well-developed roads and highways. The desired speed can be selected between 20 mph/30 km/h to 110 mph/180 km/h.

... be activated when station-

... speed limit in every situa- ... ystem.

... y of the system and the ... pacity are limited.

... s driving ahead of you ... be detected.

... n capacity

... imits to the detection ca- ... lert at all times so that you ... , if necessary; otherwise, ... an accident occurring.◀

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate when a stationary obstacle is located in the same lane, e.g., a vehicle at a red traffic light or at the end of traffic congestion.

The system also does not respond to:

▷ Pedestrians or similarly slow road users.

▷ Red traffic lights.

▷ Stationary objects.

▷ Cross traffic.

▷ Approaching traffic.

At a glance
Controls
Driving tips
Navigation
Entertainment
Communication
Mobility
Reference

⚠ No warnings

A warning may not be issued when approaching a stationary or very slow-moving obstacle. You must react yourself; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◄

Swerving vehicles

A vehicle driving in front of you is not detected until it is completely within the same lane as your vehicle.

⚠ Swerving vehicles

If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly swerves into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. This also applies to major speed differences to vehicles driving

when rapidly approaching

cle driving ahead of you is

system requests that the

braking and carrying out e

necessary. You must read

there is the danger of an a

Unexpected lane cha

If a vehicle ahead of you u

into another lane from beh

you yourself must react, a

react to stopped vehicles

Cornering

If the desired speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly in the curve, although curves cannot be anticipated in advance. Therefore, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

In tight curves, situations may result due to the restricted detection range of the system in which a vehicle driving ahead of you may not be detected at all, or not until after a considerable delay.

When approaching a curve, the system may react briefly to the vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. Any deceleration of the vehicle by the system can be compensated for by briefly accelerating. After the accelerator

pedal is released, the system becomes active again and independently controls the speed.

Driving away

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive away automatically, e.g., on steep inclines or behind bumps in the road.

Automatic deactivation

For legal reasons, the system is deactivated at speeds below 20 mph/30 km/h in the vicinity of radio astronomy stations.

Radar sensor

Position

nsor

or may hinder the detec-

the radar sensor. Remove layers of snow and ice carefully.

▷ Do not cover the view field of the radar sensor.

Malfunction

The system cannot be activated if the sensor is not aligned correctly. This may be caused by damage incurred during parking, for example.

A Check Control message is displayed if the system fails.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication

109

Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:

▷ OAYARS3-A

Compliance statement:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

▷ This device may not cause harmful interference, and

▷ this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Note

To reduce electromagne[...] properly.

The standard SAR value[...] value of this product is 0[...]

NCC declaration:

1. Companies or perso[...] tion should not char[...] crease the power, or[...] istics or functions of[...] low-power radio free[...] type approval.

2. Low-power radio fre[...] not impair legal communication or flight safety. If this type of impairment is detected, the device should be switched off immediately. In this case, please contact the manufacturer and only use the product after the problem has been corrected.

3. The "legal communication" specified above refers to communication in accordance with telecommunication regulations. Low-power devices should withstand interference from legal communication and ISM devices.

Collision warning*

The concept

The system issues a two-phase warning of a danger of collision at speeds above approx. 10 mph/15 km/h.

The collision warning is available even if cruise control has been deactivated.

[...] objects that are within the [...] radar system.

[...] tentionally brought into [...], the collision warning is [...] warnings.

[...], for example, when there [...] er of a collision or the dis-[...] head is too small.

Warning of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a relatively high differential speed.

Switching the warning function on/off

Press the button

▷ On: the LED lights up.

▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The state is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Configuring the prewarning

After the warning function is switched on, the following can be set via the iDrive:

▷ The prewarning can be switched on/off.

▷ The time of the prewarning can be set.

These settings have no effect on the time of the warning from the Active Cruise Control* that prompts the driver to inte

Display

The collision warning can
strument cluster, in the H
acoustically.

Instrument cluster

The vehicle lights

The vehicle flashe
signal sounds: acu

You are requested
ing or making an evasive

Adapting your spee
The display does not relieve the driver of the responsibility to adapt his or her driving speed and style to the traffic conditions.◄

System limits

Be alert
Due to system limitations, warnings may be not be issued at all, or may be issued late or improperly. Therefore, always be alert and ready to intervene; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◄

Detection range

The detection capacity of the radar sensor and the collision warning has limitations.

This may result in the warning not being issued or being issued late.

For example, the following situations may not be detected:

▷ Slow moving objects when you approach them at high speed.

▷ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of your vehicle.

▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

▷ Pedestrians.

Functional limitations

fully functional in the

snowfall.

s dirty or covered.

vity

g is too sensitive, there
se warnings.

al at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

It maintains the speed that was set using the control elements on the steering wheel.

The system brakes on downhill gradients if engine braking action is insufficient.

Unfavorable conditions
Do not use the system if unfavorable conditions make it impossible to drive at a constant speed, for instance:

▷ On curvy roads.

▷ In heavy traffic.

▷ On slippery roads, in fog, snow or rain, or on a loose road surface.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

111

Otherwise, you could lose control of the vehicle and cause an accident.◄

Controls

Buttons at a glance

1 System on/off, inter...
2 Resume speed
3 Store speed*
4 Store, maintain/char...

Switching on

I/O   Press the butto...

The marking in the spee...
current speed.

Cruise control can be us...

Switching off

⚠   Deactivated or inte...
If the system is dea...
actively intervene by braking and, if necessary, with evasive maneuvers; otherwise, there is the danger of an accident occurring.◄

I/O   Press the button.

▷ If active: press twice.
▷ If interrupted: press once.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting

I/O   When active, press the button.

The system is automatically interrupted if:

▷ The brakes are applied.
▷ The clutch pedal is depressed.
▷ Transmission position D is disengaged.
▷ DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated or DSC is deactivated.
▷ DSC is actively controlling stability.
▷ HDC is activated.

Maintaining/storing the current speed

SET   Press the button.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired ...

... peedometer and briefly ... ment cluster, Displays in ...

... maintained or stored, ... y Control is switched on, if

... speed

... be pressed while inter- ... store the current speed.

... sired speed

... ed speed to the road con- ... brake at all times; other- ... ger of an accident occur-

Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed if the road is clear.

▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/ 1 km/h.

▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

▷ Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it accelerates or decelerates the vehicle without requiring pressure on the accelerator. After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the s~~~~ sistance point causes ~~~~ erate more rapidly.

Resuming the desire~~~~

RES Press the button~~~~

The stored speed is reach~~~~

Displays in the instru~~~~

1 Display of desired speed
2 Indicator lamp
3 Brief status display

Desired speed

Display in the speedometer:

▷ The marking lights up in green: the system is active.

▷ The marking lights up in orange: the system has been interrupted.

▷ The marking does not light up: the system is switched off.

Brief status display

Brief display in the speedometer:

55 Selected desired speed

If --- appears briefly, conditions may not be adequate to operate the system.

~~~~ance Control*~~~~

~~~~ark Distance Control, the~~~~
~~~~to page , can be~~~~

parking. Objects that ~~~~owly in front of or behind~~~~ ~~~~ed with:

~~~~le by ultrasound sensors in the bumpers.

The range is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning is first given:

▷ By the front* sensors and the two rear corner sensors at approx. 24 in/60 cm.

▷ By the rear middle sensors at approx. 5 ft/ 1.50 m.

System limits

⚠ Check the traffic situation as well
PDC cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of the traffic situation. Check the traffic situation around the vehi-

113
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 606 497 - 03 11 490

At a glance · Controls · Driving tips · Navigation · Entertainment · Communication · Mobility · Reference

cle with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects located outside of the PDC detection range.

Loud noises from outside and inside the vehicle may prevent you from hearing the PDC's signal tone.◀

⚠️ Avoid driving quickly with PDC

Avoid approaching an object quickly.

Avoid driving away quickly while PDC is not yet active.

For technical reasons, the system may otherwise be too late in issuing a warning.◀

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

The detection of objects
limits of ultrasonic meas

▷ With tow bars and tr

▷ With thin or wedge-s

▷ With low objects.

▷ With objects with co

Low objects already disp
move into the blind area
after a continuous tone s

High, protruding objects
be detected.

False warnings

PDC may issue a warnir
conditions even though
within the detection range:

▷ In heavy rain.

▷ When sensors are very dirty or covered in ice.

▷ When sensors are covered in snow.

▷ On rough road surfaces.

▷ In large buildings with right angles and smooth walls, e.g., in underground garages.

▷ In heavy exhaust.

▷ Due to other ultrasound sources, e.g., sweeping machines, high pressure steam cleaners or neon lights.

Switching on automatically

Select transmission position R with the engine running.

Switching off automatically

The system switches off and the LED goes out:

▷ After approx. 160 ft/50 m when driving forward.

▷ Above approx. 22 mph/36 km/h when driving forward.

Switch on the system again if necessary.

Switching on/off manually

.
s up.
out.

object, an intermittent
indicates the position of the
object. For example, if an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object becomes, the shorter the intervals.

If the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 12 in/30 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

If objects are located both in front of and behind the vehicle, an alternating continuous signal is sounded.

The intermittent tone is interrupted after approx. 3 seconds:

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

▷ If the vehicle stops in front of an object that is detected by only one of the corner sensors.

▷ If moving parallel to a wall.

The signal tone is switched off:

▷ When the vehicle moves away from an object by more than approx. 4 in/10 cm.

▷ When transmission position P is engaged.

Volume

You can set the volume of the PDC signal tone, refer to page 171.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Visual warning

The approach of the vehic
shown on the Control Dis
farther away are displayec
play before a signal tone s

A display appears as soon
Control (PDC) is activated

If the backup camera imag
again appears on the disp

1. R⤧ "Rear view camer
   on the Control Display

2. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for th
rently in use.

Zoom view*

On the left part of the display screen, the vehicle is shown enlarged.

▷ Transmission position D engaged: front area of the vehicle.

▷ Transmission position R engaged: rear area of the vehicle.

Display on the Control Display

Switching on the backup camera via the iDrive

With PDC activated:

R⤤ "Rear view camera"

The backup camera image is displayed. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

the areas in front of and
shaded. PDC has failed.
ed.

ty:

lean and free of ice.

sure washer, keep the
sprayer moving and maintain a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm from the sensors.

Surround View*

The concept

Surround View includes the following systems:

▷ Backup camera, refer to page 116.

▷ Side View, refer to page 118.

▷ Top View, refer to page 119.

It assists the driver when parking, maneuvering and on blind driveways and intersections.

Backup camera*

The concept

The backup camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

System limits

⚠️ Check the traffic situation as well

Check the traffic situation around the vehicle with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects located outside the picture area of the backup camera.◄

⚠️ Detection of objects

High, protruding o[...]
may not be detected by [...]

Switching on autom[...]

Select transmission pos[...]
running.

The backup camera ima[...]
system was switched or[...]

Switching off autom[...]

The system switches of[...]

▷ After approx. 33 ft/1[...]
ward.

▷ Above approx. 9 mp[...]
forward.

Switch on the system again if necessary.

Switching on/off manually

P))) Press the button.

▷ On: the LED lights up.

▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The PDC is shown on the Control Display.

Assistance functions

Functional requirement

▷ The backup camera is switched on.

▷ The trunk lid is fully closed.

Pathway lines

[...]he backup camera image
[...]sion position R.

[...]ate the space required
[...]maneuvering on level

[...]the current steering angle
[...]sly adjusted to the steer-
[...]ents.

Turning circle lines

▷ Can be shown in the backup camera image.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 606 497 - 03 11 490

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

▷ Show the course of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road.

▷ Only one turning circle line is displayed when the steering wheel is turned.

Show the parking aid lines, refer to page .

Parking using pathway and turning circle lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the turning circle lines lead to within the limits of the parking space.

2. Turn the steering whe___ the pathway line cove___ turning circle line.

Obstacle marking

▷ Spatially-shaped markings can be shown in the backup camera image.

Their colored steps match the markings of the PDC. This simplifies estimation of the distance to the object shown.

Activating the assistance functions

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

Showing the parking aid lines

⫻ "Parking aid lines"

Pathway and turning circle lines are displayed.

Showing the obstacle marking

ᴾᴦ "Obstacle marking"

Spatially-shaped markings are displayed.

___trol Display

___ackup camera via

___'

___ge is displayed. The set-
___mote control currently in

___ a switched on:

___ol.

___ until the desired setting
is reached and press the controller.

Contrast

With the backup camera switched on:

1. ◑ Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

117

Camera

The camera lens is located in the handle of the trunk lid. The image quality may be impaired by dirt.

Clean the lens, refer to page 273.

Side View*

The concept

Side View provides an e
at blind driveways and in
concealed by obstacles
the vehicle can only be
from the driver's seat. T
cameras in the front of t
traffic situation on each

System limits

The maximum recording
330 ft/100 m.

Display

The images from both cameras are shown simultaneously on the Control Display.

⚠ **Check the traffic situation as well**

Check the traffic situation around the vehicle on blind driveways and intersections with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects located outside the picture area of the Side View cameras.◀

Switching off automatically

System switches off: above approx. 9 mph/ 15 km/h.

Switch on the system again if necessary.

Switching on/off manually

🔲 Press the button.

Display on the Control Display

The traffic area to the left and right is displayed on the Control Display.

om of the image show the f the vehicle.

vitched on:

1. ☼ Brightness

2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Contrast

With the Side View switched on:

1. ◑ "Contrast"

2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Cameras

The two camera lenses are located on the sides of the bumper.

The image quality may be impaired by dirt.

Clean the lens, refer to page 273.

Top View*

The concept

Top View assists you in p
ing. The area around the d
around the vehicle are sho
Display for this purpose.

Capturing the image

The image is captured by
integrated in the exterior
backup camera.

The range equals:

▷ approx. 10 ft/3 m to th

▷ approx. 7 ft/2 m to the rear.

In this way, obstacles up to the height of the exterior mirrors are detected early.

System limits

Top View cannot be used in the following situations:

▷ With a door open.

▷ With the trunk lid open.

▷ With an exterior mirror folded in.

▷ In poor light.

A Check Control message is displayed in some of these situations.

⚠ Check the traffic situation as well

Check the traffic situation around the vehicle with your own eyes. Otherwise, an accident could result from road users or objects located outside the picture area of the cameras.◀

Switching on automatically

Select transmission position R with the engine running.

The Top View and PDC images are displayed if the system is switched on via iDrive.

Switching off automatically

The system switches off and the LED goes out:

▷ After approx. 160 ft/50 m when driving for-

mph/36 km/h when driv-

gain if necessary.

anually

Pⅈ︎ Press the button.

▷ On: the LED lights up.

▷ Off: the LED goes out.

If Top View is displayed, switch on the backup camera via the iDrive, refer to page 120.

Visual warning

The approach of the vehicle to an object can be shown on the Control Display.

When the distance to an object is small, a red bar is shown in front of the vehicle, as it is in the PDC display.

The display appears as soon as Top View is activated.

If the backup camera image was selected last, it again appears on the display. To switch to Top View:

R "Rear view camera" Select the symbol on the Control Display.

The setting is stored for
rently in use.

Display on the Cont

Switching on the ba
iDrive

With Top View switched

R "Rear view camera"

The backup camera imag
ting is stored for the ren
use.

Brightness

With Top View switched

1. ☼ "Brightness"
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Contrast

With Top View switched on:

1. ◑ "Contrast"
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

Displaying the turning circle and pathway lines

▷ The static, red turning circle line shows the space needed to the side of the vehicle when the steering wheel is turned all the way.

▷ The variable, green pathway line assists you in assessing the amount of space actually needed to the side of the vehicle.

The pathway line is dependent on the current steering angle and is continuously adjusted with the steering wheel movement.

P "Parking aid lines"

Turning circle and pathway lines are displayed.

Top View cameras are lo-
f the exterior mirror hous-
y may be impaired by dirt.
ɔ page 273.

Night Vision with pedestrian detection*

The concept

Night Vision with pedestrian detection is a night vision system.

An infrared camera records the area in front of the vehicle and displays the image on the Control Display.

The picture is a heat image. The system has an integrated pedestrian detection function that detects pedestrians and cyclists. Warm objects that are similar in shape to human beings are detected by the system.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

⚠ Personal responsibility

Night Vision cannot replace the driver's personal judgment of the visibility conditions and the traffic situation. The view ahead and the actual visibility conditions must always be the basis on which the vehicle speed is adjusted; otherwise, there is a risk to road safety.◄

Heat image

The image shows the hea[...] in the field of view of the c[...]

Warm objects have a ligh[...] objects, a dark appearanc[...]

The ability to detect an ob[...] temperature difference be[...] the background and on the[...] emitted by the object. Obj[...] temperature to the enviro[...] very little heat are difficul[...]

For safety reasons, when [...] above approx. 3 mph/5 km[...] light, the image is only dis[...] beams are switched on.

A still image is displayed at regular intervals for a fraction of a second.

Pedestrian detection

The pedestrian detection and warning system only operates in darkness and only when a heat image is displayed.

Warm objects that are similar in shape to human beings are detected by the system.

[...] system are displayed [...]

[...]nditions, the pedestrian [...]tes within a range of ap-[...]ox. 330 ft/100 m.

[...]es can limit the availabil-[...] of pedestrian detection.

If pedestrian detection is not available, a symbol is displayed in the heat image.

This symbol disappears when the function becomes available again.

Warning of people in danger

If the system detects a person in the defined area in front of the vehicle and if there is the danger of a collision with this person, a warning symbol appears in the Control Display and Head-up Display*.

Although both the shape and the heat radiation are analyzed, false warni

Warning area in fron

The warning area in front into two areas.

▷ Central area 1 direct

▷ Expanded area 2 to the right and left.

The entire area moves along with the vehicle in the direction of the steering angle and changes with the vehicle speed. As the vehicle speed increases, the area becomes longer and wider, for example.

Symbols

This symbol is displayed when a person is detected in the central area, arrow 1, immediately in front of the vehicle.

This symbol is displayed when a person detected in the extended area, arrow 2,

is moving from the right or left to the central area.

Display in the Head-up Display*

The warning is simultaneously displayed in the Head-up Display and in the Control Display. The displayed symbol can vary with the people detected. For people located in the central area, the distance to the person is indicated by the size of the symbol.

System limits

Basic limits

System operation is limited in situations such as the following:

On steep hills, in steep depressions or in

is dirty or the protective

or snowfall.

nal temperatures.

an detection

ted by the pedestrian de-
if they are clearly visible in

tection:

fully or partially covered,
heir heads are covered.

not in an upright position,
e.g., when lying down.

▷ Cyclists on unconventional bicycles (e.g., recumbent bicycles).

▷ After physical damage to the system, e.g., after an accident.

Activation/deactivation

 Press the button.

Display

Night Vision with pedestrian detection is not available on the rear scree... *

Settings via iDrive

With Night Vision switche...

1. Activate Night Vision v... tion.

2. Press the controller.

3. Open the desired men...

   ▷ ☼ "Brightness"

   ▷ ◐ "Contrast"

   ▷ ⚠ "Pedestrian d...

The settings are stored fo... currently in use.

Camera

Rain, dirt, snow, or ice can impair camera operation.

The camera is automatically heated when the external temperatures are low.

The camera is automatically cleaned together with the headlamps.

Clean the lens, refer to page .

Head-up Display*

The concept

...portant information into ...n, e.g., the speed.

...an get information with... ...eyes from the road.

...lays in the Head-up Dis-

...:ions.

...er of the Head-up Dis-

...rtain polarization filters.

▷ Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, check the basic settings.

Switching on/off

123

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

 Press the button.

Display

1 Lane departure warning*

2 Active Cruise Control*

3 Desired speed

4 Navigation system*

5 Speed

The collision warning*, N... warning, or Check Contr... played briefly if needed.

Selecting displays i... Display

1. "Settings"

2. "Head-up display"

3. "Displayed informat...

4. Select the desired d... Display.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient light.

The basic setting can be adjusted manually.

1. "Settings"

2. "Head-up display"

3. "Brightness"

4. Turn the controller.

   The brightness is adjusted.

When the low beams are switched on, the brightness of the Head-up Display can be additionally influenced using the instrument lighting, refer to page 87.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Adjusting the height

1. "Settings"

2. "Head-up display"

3. "Height"

4. Turn the controller.

   The height is adjusted.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

... d

: of the system.

...dshield makes it possible ...nage.

...d prevents double images

...pecial windshield replaced ...ly.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Climate control

Automatic climate control*

1 Air distribution, left

2 Temperature, left

3 AUTO program, left

4 Air volume, AUTO intensity, left

5 Remove ice and condensation

6 Maximum cooling

7 Display

8 Air volume, AUTO intensity, right

9 AUTO program, right

10 Temperature, right

16 ster

17 ALL program

18 Active seat ventilation*, left   51

19 Seat heating*, left   50

Climate control functions in detail

Manual air distribution

Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

▷ Upper body region.

▷ Upper body region and footwell.

▷ Footwell.

▷ Windows and footwell: driver's side only.

▷ Windows, upper body region and footwell: driver's side only.

If the windows are fogged over, press the AUTO button on the driver's side to utilize the condensation sensor.

Temperature

Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

The automatic climate control achieves this temperature as quickly as possible, if necessary with the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

Avoid rapidly switching between different temperature settings. The automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

AUTO program

AUTO Press the butto

Air volume, air
perature are controlled a

Depending on the select
intensity, and outside in
rected to the windshield
body, and into the footw

The cooling function, re
switched on automatica
gram.

At the same time, a cond
trols the program so as t
densation as much as p

Intensity of the AUTO

With the AUTO program switched on, automatic control of the air volume and air distribution can be adjusted.

Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase the intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Air volume, manual

To be able to manually adjust the air volume, switch off the AUTO program first.

Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase air volume.

The selected air volume is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

The air volume of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Press the button.

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

The air volume can be adjusted when the program is active.

If the windows are fogged over, additionally
function or press the
the condensation sensor.

ton.

s set to the lowest tem-
r volume and recirculated-

nts for the upper body re-
his purpose.

y as possible:

perature of approx. 32 °F/

is running.

The air volume can be adjusted when the program is active.

Automatic recirculated-air control/ recirculated-air mode

You can respond to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.

Press the button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

▷ LEDs off: outside air flows in continuously.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

▷ Left LED on, automatic recirculated-air control: a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

▷ Right LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

If the windows are fogged over, switch off the recirculated-air mode and press the AUTO button on the driver's side to utilize the condensation sensor. Make sure that air can flow onto the windshield.

⚠ Continuous recirculated-air mode

The recirculated-air mode should not be used for an extended period of time, as the air quality inside the vehicle c

Cooling function

The passenger compartm[...] cooled with the engine ru[...]

❄ Press the button[...]

The air is cooled[...] – depending on the temp[...] warmed again.

Depending on the weathe[...] fog up briefly when the en[...]

The cooling function is sw[...] cally with the AUTO prog[...]

When using the automati[...] densation water, refer to [...] that exits underneath the vehicle.

Rear window defroster

▥ Press the button.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

ALL program

ALL The current settings on the driver's side for temperature, air volume, air distribution, and AUTO program are transferred to the front passenger side and to the left and right rear.

The program is switched off if the settings on the front passenger side or in the rear are changed.

Residual heat

The heat stored in the engine is used to heat the interior.

Functional requirement

▷ Up to 20 minutes after the engine has been switched off.

▷ Warm engine.

▷ The battery is sufficiently charged.

▷ External temperature below 77 °F/25 °C.

[...]on.

[...]ght side of the button on

[...]lay of the automatic cli-

[...]e, air volume and air dis-[...]ed with the ignition

[...], press the left side of the[...]ide.

[...]utomatic climate control goes out.

Switching the system on/off

Switching off

▷ Complete system:

❄ 🌀 At the lowest fan speed, press the left side of the button on the driver's side.

▷ On the front passenger side:

❄ 🌀 At the lowest fan speed, press the left side of the button on the front passenger side.

127

Switching on

Press any button.

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air.

The activated-charcoal filter removes gaseous pollutants from the outside air that enters the vehicle.

This combined filter should be replaced during scheduled maintenance of your vehicle., refer to page 258

Ventilation

Front ventilation

▷ Thumbwheels for ad▢▢▢▢ture, arrows 1.

Toward blue: colder

Toward red: warmer

▷ Lever for changing t▢▢ ▢▢ ▢▢▢▢ ▢▢▢▢▢▢▢, ▢▢row 2.

▷ Thumbwheels for opening and closing the vents continuously, arrows 3.

Ventilation levels

▷ Draft-free ventilation:

Thumbwheel, arrow 3, in level ⌣ : the air current is fanned out.

▷ Maximum air volume:

Thumbwheel, arrow 3, in level ⫸ : the air is partially fanned out and partially bundled. This maximizes the air supply.

▷ Direct ventilation:

Thumbwheel, arrow 3, in level ➞ : the air is bundled and can be directed to a specific point.

Adjusting the ventilation

▷ Ventilation for cooling:

Adjust the vent to direct the air in your direction, e.g., if the vehicle interior is hot from the sun.

▷ Draft-free ventilation:

Adjust the vent to let the air flow past you.

Ventilation in rear, center

▢ ▢r adjusting the tempera-

▢▢ ▢▢er.

▢▢ ▢▢er.

▢▢ ▢g the air flow direction, ar-

▢▢ opening and closing the ▢▢▢y, arrow 3.

Lateral ventilation

▷ Thumbwheel for opening and closing the vents continuously, arrow 1.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

▷ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 2.

Rear automatic climate control*

At a glance

1 Temperature
2 AUTO program
3 Vent settings
4 Air volume, AUTO int[ensity]
5 Display
6 Maximum cooling
7 Seat heating* 53
8 Active seat ventilation

Note

The air volume of the aut[omatic climate control]
may be reduced automati[cally ...]
power.

Switching the rear automatic climate control on/off

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Rear climate control"

The rear automatic climate control is not operational if the automatic climate control is switched off or if the function for defrosting or defogging the windows is active.

AUTO program

AUTO   Press the button.

Air volume, air distribution, and temperature are controlled automatically:

Depending on the selected temperature, AUTO intensity, and outside influences, the air is directed to the upper body and into the footwell.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Intensity of the AUTO program

With the AUTO program switched on, automatic control of the air volume and air distribution can be adjusted.

Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase the intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display [of the climat]e control.

[...] wheel to set the desired [tempera]ture.

[...] control achieves this
[...] as possible, if necessary
[...]ing or heating capacity,
[...]ant.

[...] between different tem-
[...]utomatic climate control
[...]ime to adjust the set

Manual air distribution

The air distribution can be adjusted to individual needs.

Press the button repeatedly to select a program:

▷ Upper body region.
▷ Upper body region and footwell.
▷ Footwell.

Air volume, manual

To be able to manually adjust the air volume, switch off the AUTO program first.

129

Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase air volume.

The selected air volume is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Switching the system on/off

Switching off

At the lowest fan speed, press the left side of the button on the driver's side.

Switching on

Press any button.

Maximum cooling

Press the butto

The system is s

perature, maximum air v

air mode.

Air flows out of the vents

gion. Open them for this

Air is cooled as quickly a

▷ At an external tempe
0 ℃.

▷ When the engine is

Climate control ope
headliner*

Temperature

Turn the wheel to set the desired temperature.

Air volume

Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase air volume.

LEDs indicate the intensity of the air supply.

The air volume may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Ventilation

Thumbwheel for changing the air flow direction, arrow.

Parked-car ventilation

ation ventilates the vehicle
temperature, if necessary.

vitched on and off directly
t switch-on times. It re-
30 minutes.

via iDrive.

ation

ch-on time or when oper-
rnal temperature.

w air to flow out.

lirectly

1. "Settings

2. "Climate"

3. "Activate parked-car vent."

Climate
Seat heating distribution
Seat heating rear
☐ Rear climate control
☐ Activate parked-car vent.
☐ Activate Timer 1
Timer 1:
☐ Activate Timer 2

❄ The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes if the system is switched on.

The system continues to run for some time after being switched off.

Preselecting the switch-on time

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Timer 1:" or "Timer 2:"
4. Set the desired time.

Activating the switch-on time

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate Timer 1" or "Activate Timer 2"

❄ The symbol on the automatic climate control lights up when the switch-on time is activated.

❄ The symbol on the aut… flashes when the system …

The system will only be s… next 24 hours. After that, i…

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Interior equipment

Integrated universal remote control*

The concept

This system can replace up to three different hand-held transmitters for various types of re- mote-controlled equipment, such as garage doors or lighting systems.

The hand-held transmitter signal can be pro- grammed on one of the three memory buttons.

The corresponding device can then be operated using the programmed memory button.

The LED indicates that a[...] mitted.

When selling the vehicle[...] grams for security reaso[...]

⚠ During programmi[...]
During programmi[...] ing a device using the u[...] ensure that there are no[...] jects in the range of mov[...] controlled device; other[...] injury or damage.

Also follow the safety in[...] held transmitter.◄

Compatibility

🏠 If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the instructions of the hand-held transmitter, the remote-controlled de- vice is generally compatible with the universal remote control.

If you have any questions, please contact:

▷ Your service center.

▷ www.homelink.com on the Internet.

Programming

▷ LED, arrow 1.

▷ Memory buttons, arrow 2.

[...] held transmitters

[...]tion.

[...]uttons 1 and 3 for approx. [...] he LED flashes.

[...]e three memory buttons, [...]ed.

[...]d transmitter a distance of [...]to 20 cm from the memory

[...]ess the transmit button of [...]smitter and the memory [...]ersal remote control.

[...]lowly.

5. Release both buttons when the LED flashes rapidly.

   If the LED does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, change the distance and repeat the step.

The device can be operated using the memory button with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

Malfunction

If the device cannot be used after repeated at- tempts at programming, please check whether the hand-held transmitter is equipped with an alternating code system.

To do so:

▷ Read the instructions of the hand-held transmitter.

▷ Press the memory button of the universal remote control for an extended period.

If the LED flashes rapidly for a brief period and then lights up continuously for approx. 2 seconds, the hand-held transmitter is equipped with an alternating code system.

In this case, program the memory buttons as described under Alternating-code hand-held transmitters.

Alternating-code hand-held transmitters

Please obtain information   lowly after approx.
device in the operating ma   the transmit button on
ing set up.   smitter.

Programming will be easie   ns when the LED flashes
ond person.

1. Park the vehicle within   lash rapidly after approx.
   controlled device.   the distance and repeat

2. Program the universal
   scribed above under F   **programs**
   transmitters.

3. Press and hold the pr   memory buttons for ap-
   the interior rearview m   he LED flashes rapidly.
   onds until the device   deleted.
   vated.   be deleted individually.

   If the device does not
   press and hold the button and watch the
   LED:

   ▷ If the LED lights up continuously, the programming is completed. The device should become activated when the button is pressed briefly.

   ▷ If the LED flashes for approx. 2 seconds and then lights up continuously, continue the programming procedure beginning with step 4.

4. Locate the button on the receiver of the device to be set, e.g., on the drive.

5. Press the button on the receiver of the device to be set. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.

6. Press the programmed memory button of the universal remote control three times.

The device can be operated when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

Reassigning individual programs

1. Switch on the ignition.

2. Hold the hand-held transmitter a distance of approx. 2 to 8 in/5 to 20 cm from the memory buttons.

3. Press the memory button of the universal remote control.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 606 497 - 03 11 490

Ashtray/cigarette lighter*

Front

Opening

Press on the cover.

Emptying

Place your finger in the ...
ashtray, arrow, and push ...

The ashtray can be remo...

Lighter

Push in the lighter.

The lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

 Danger of burns

Only hold the hot lighter by its knob; otherwise, there is the danger of getting burned.

Switch off the ignition and take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children cannot use the lighter and burn themselves.◀

Rear

Opening

Press on the cover.

Emptying

... ot lighter by its knob; otherwise, there is the danger of getting burned.

Take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle so that children cannot use the lighter and burn themselves.◀

The lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

Connecting electrical devices

Sockets

The lighter socket can be used as a socket for electrical equipment while the engine is running or when the ignition is switched on. The total

load of all sockets must not exceed 140 Watt at 12 V.

Do not damage the socket by using unsuitable connectors.

Front center console

Press on the cover.

Remove the cover or ciga...

Rear center console

Remove the cover or ciga...

In the cargo area*

Remove the cover.

Rear cooler*

Behind the center armrest

The cooler is located behind the center armrest in the rear.

Fold the center armrest down.

fold the cooler forward.

...ated at two levels.

1. Switch on the ignition.

2. ❄ Press the button once for each cooling level.

   The highest cooling power is active when two LEDs are lit.

If the cooler was switched on the last time the ignition was switched on, it will likewise be switched on the next time the ignition is switched on.

Switching off

Press the button repeatedly until the LEDs go out.

135

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Malfunction

The cooler cannot be switched on or switches off, e.g., when the cooling system overheats or if the battery voltage is low. One of the LEDs flashes.

Remedy the problem

1. If necessary, allow the refrigerator cooling system to cool down.
2. Starting the engine.
3. Switch on cooler.

If the LED flashes even after a short time, have the cooler checked by the service center.

Folding table*

A folding table is contain front seat.

Folding down

⚠ Pinch hazard durin

Make sure that the around the folding table clear; otherwise, injuries

Pulling on the handle, draw the table up and out and fold it down.

⚠ Close the folding table when driving

Keep the folding table closed as much as possible to prevent the any danger of injury during driving through objects on the folding table or the folding table itself.◀

Ski bag*

Capacity

The ski bag can be used to transport up to three pairs of skis with a length of up to 6 ft/2.10 m or a snowboard of up to 5 ft/1.60 m.

Preparing and loading the ski bag

1. Fold open the center arm rest and the lid on the inside.
2. Open the inside cover and cargo area by pressing the button.

g.

If necessary, wrap the e skis.

the ski bag zipper to ease he ski bag.

5. Insert the tongue plate into the belt buckle.

6. Tighten the retaining strap.

⚠️ Securing the ski ba[g]

Secure the ski bag [by means of the re]taining strap; otherwise, t[...]present a source of dange[...]for example during brakin[g maneu]vers.◀

Removing the ski ba[g]

The ski bag can be remov[...]quickly or to use other ins[...]

1. Pull the handle forward and lift the ski bag out.

2. Close the cover in the cargo area.

More information on the various inserts available can be obtained from your service center.

At a glance
Controls
Driving tips
Navigation
Entertainment
Communication
Mobility
Reference

Storage compartments

Storage compartments

The following storage compartments are available in the vehicle interior:

▷ Glove compartment on the driver's and front passenger side, refer to page .

▷ Storage compartment in the center armrest, refer to page , in the front and rear.

▷ Compartments in the doors.

▷ Pockets on the backrests of the front seats*.

▷ Net in the front passenger footwell*.

⚠ **No loose objects in the passenger compartment**

Do not stow any objects ~~in the passenger com-~~
partment without securi~~ng~~ automatically.
they may present a dang~~er~~
stance during braking a~~nd~~ ~~over~~
vers.◀ d.

Glove compart~~ment~~ data transfer

Front passenger si~~de~~

Opening

Pull the handle.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

⚠ **Close the glove compartment again immediately**

Close the glove compartment immediately after use while driving; otherwise, injury may occur during accidents.◀

Closing

Fold up the cover.

Opening the top cover

Connection for importing and exporting data on USB devices, e.g.:

▷ Personal Profile settings, refer to page .

▷ Music collection, refer to page .

Observe the following when connecting:

▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.

▷ Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB interface.

▷ Do not connect USB hard drives.

▷ Do not use the USB interface to recharge external devices.

Driver's side

Opening

Pull the handle.

⚠️ **Close the glove compartment again immediately**

Close the glove compartm[...]
use while driving; otherwi[...]
during accidents.◀

Closing

Fold up the cover.

Center armrest

Front

A storage compartment is[...]
armrest between the fron[...]

Opening

Press the buttons next to the lock.

Locking the storage compartment

The storage compartment in the armrest can be locked with an integrated key to separately secure the trunk lid, refer to page 41, for example.

After the storage compartment is locked, the remote control can be handed out without the [...] page 32, for instance at

[...] the storage compart-
[...] area.

[...external audio]

This can be used to connect an external audio device, such as a CD or MP3 player.

▷ AUX-IN port, refer to page 190.

▷ USB audio interface*, refer to page 191.

Rear

A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

Opening

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the button is in the depression at the front of the center armrest or on top of the center armrest.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Cupholders

Notes

⚠️ Shatter-proof containers and no hot drinks

Use light and shatter-proof containers and do not transport hot drinks. Otherwise, there is the increased danger of injury in an accident.◄

⚠️ Unsuitable containers

Do not forcefully push unsuitable containers into the cupholders. This may result in damage.◄

Front

To open: press on the c

Rear

In the front of the center

To open: press the button.
To close: slide back.

Clothes hooks

The clothes hooks are located next to the grab handles in the rear and on the door pillar in the rear.

⚠️ Do not obstruct view

When suspending clothing from the hooks, ensure that it will not obstruct the driver's vision.◄

⚠️ No heavy objects

Do not hang heavy objects from the hooks; otherwise, they may present a danger to passengers during braking and evasive maneuvers.◄

e stored in the net on the

jects, it can be pushed

nent under the cargo

Raise the cargo floor panel.

Storage compartment on the side

Under the cover on the side of the cargo area is a storage compartment that can be used to store the printed Owner's Manual, for example.

Remove the cover.

Lashing eyes

To secure the cargo, refe
are lashing eyes in the ca

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

141

Driving tips

...des you with information useful ...n specific driving and operating modes.

Things to remember when driving

Breaking-in period

General information

Moving parts need to be broken in to adjust to each other.

The following instructions will help achieve a long vehicle life and good economy.

Engine and differential

Always obey the official speed limit.

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Do not exceed the maxi​ speed:

▷ For gasoline engine, 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full-throttle opera transmission's kickdow miles.

From 1,200 miles/2,

The engine and vehicle increased.

Tires

Due to technical factors manufacture, tires do n tion potential until after a riod.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/ 300 km.

Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of ap​prox. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimized contact and wear patterns between brake pads and discs. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

Clutch

The function of the clutch reaches its optimal level only after a distance driven of approx.

300 miles/500 km. During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

Following part replacement

The same breaking in procedures should be ob​served if any of the components mentioned above have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle's operating life.

General driving notes

Closing the trunk lid

unk lid closed

he tailgate closed; other​ n accident or braking or assengers or other road or the vehicle may be dam​ aust fumes may enter the ent.◀

ate open cannot be

and the glass sunroof*. he blower speed.

⚠ Hot exhaust system

High temperatures are generated in the exhaust system.

Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. When driv​ing, standing at idle and while parking, take care to avoid possible contact between the hot ex​haust system and any highly flammable materi​als such as hay, leaves, grass, etc. Such contact could lead to a fire, and with it the risk of serious personal injury as well as property damage.

Do not touch hot exhaust pipes; otherwise, there is the danger of getting burned.◀

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Climate control windshield*

The marked area is not covered with heat reflective coating.

Use this area for garage door openers, devices for electronic toll collection, etc.

Climate control lamir_ glass*

The vehicle glass provide_ against the harmful effects_ skin.

Mobile communicatic_ vehicle

⚠️ Mobile communicat_ hicle

It is advised that you do n_ nication devices, e.g., mol_ vehicle without connectin_ external antenna. Otherw_ tronics and mobile comm_ interfere with each other._

assurance that the radiation generated during transmission will be discharged from the vehicle interior.◀

Hydroplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

⚠️ Hydroplaning

When driving on wet or slushy roads, reduce your speed to prevent hydroplaning.◀

Driving through water

Drive though calm water only if it is not deeper than 9.8 inches/25 cm and at this height, no faster than walking speed, up to 6 mph/10 km/h.

⚠️ Adhere to water depth and speed limitations

Do not exceed this water depth and walking speed; otherwise, the vehicle's engine, the electrical systems and the transmission may be damaged.◀

_ d with ABS as a standard

_ ly is the most effective _ ions when this is neces-

_ teering responsiveness. _ bstacles with a minimum

_ pedal and sounds from _ dicate that ABS is in its

_ around the pedals

_ area around the pedals

Keep floor mats, carpets, and any other objects out of the area of motion of the pedals; otherwise, the function of the pedals could be impeded while driving

Do not place additional floor mats over existing mats or other objects.

Only use floor mats that have been approved for the vehicle and can be properly fixed in place.

Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed for cleaning, for example.◀

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet or there is heavy rain, briefly exert gentle pressure on the brake pedal every few miles.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other road users.

The heat generated in this process helps dry the brake discs and pads.

In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

Hills

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear in which the least braking is required. Otherwise, the brake system may overheat, resulting in a reduction in the brake s

You can increase the en
shifting down in the man
matic transmission, refe

⚠ Avoid load on the

Avoid placing exce
system. Light but consis
lead to high temperature
sibly even brake failure.

⚠ Do not drive in neu

Do not drive in neu
stopped, as doing so dis
addition, steering and br
with the engine stoppec

Brake disc corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are furthered by:

▷ Low mileage.

▷ Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.

▷ Infrequent use of the brakes.

Corrosion occurs when the minimum pressure that must be exerted by the pads during brake applications to clean the discs is not reached.

Should corrosion form on the brake discs, the brakes will tend to respond with a pulsating effect that generally cannot be corrected.

Condensation under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

Therefore, traces of condensed water under the vehicle are normal.

Loading

⚠ Overloading the vehicle

To avoid exceeding the approved carrying capacity of the tires, never overload the vehicle. Overloading can lead to overheating and increases the rate at which damage develops inside the tires. This could result in a sudden loss re.◄

runk

luids do not leak into the
ehicle may be damaged.◄

ad limit

1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard*:

   ▷ The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or YYY lbs. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and unstable driving situations may result.

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or YYY pounds.

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

   For example, if the YYY amount equals 1,000 lbs and there will be four 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 400 lbs: 1,000 lbs minus 600 lbs = 400 lbs.

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

Load

The maximum load is the ~~sum of the weight of~~ the occupants and the ca~~rgo.~~

The greater the weight of ~~the occupants, the~~ less cargo that can be tra~~nsported.~~

The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing cargo

▷ Heavy cargo: stow as far forward and as low as possible, ideally directly behind the cargo area separating wall.

▷ Very heavy cargo: when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety ~~belts in the opposite buckle.~~

~~...~~ and corners.

~~...~~ cargo area

~~...~~ere are four lashing eyes in the cargo area

Securing cargo

▷ Smaller and lighter items: secure with retaining straps or with a cargo net* or draw straps.

▷ Larger and heavy objects: secure with cargo straps*.

Cargo straps, cargo netting, retaining straps or draw straps on the lashing eyes in the cargo area.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

147

⚠️ Securing cargo

Always position and secure the cargo as described above; otherwise, it can endanger the car's occupants if sudden braking or swerving becomes necessary.

Heavy or hard objects should not be carried loose inside the car; otherwise, they could be thrown around as a result of hard braking, sudden swerves, etc., and endanger the occupants.◀

Roof-mounted luggage rack

Note

Installation only possible ~~~~~ of those vehicles with flaps*. Your service ~~~~~ advise you.

Roof racks are available ~~~~~

Attachment

Follow the installation in ~~~~~ rack.

Roof drip rail with fl~~~

On the roof drip rail, press on the outside of the flap.

Mounting

The preparation for the mounting plate is located below the roof drip rail. Have the mounting plate installed by the service center before installation of a roof rack.

Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for raising and opening the glass sunroof*.

Magnetic roof-mounted luggage rack

Because of the aluminum roof, magnetic roof-mounted luggage racks cannot be mounted.

Loading

Because roof racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

▷ Do not exceed the approved roof/axle loads.

▷ Distribute the roof load uniformly.

▷ The roof load should not be too large in area.

▷ Always load the heaviest pieces on the bottom.

~~~~~ uggage firmly, e.g., tie with ~~~~~

~~~~~ project into the opening ~~~~~ id.

~~~~~ void sudden acceleration ~~~~~ uvers. Take corners gen-

~~~on

~~~~~ advanced technology for ~~~~~ onsumption and emis-

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

The implementation of certain measures, driving style and regular maintenance can have an influence on fuel consumption and on the environmental impact.

Remove unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove attached parts following use

Remove auxiliary mirrors, roof or rear luggage racks which are no longer required following use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aero-dynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

Close the windows and glass sunroof*

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased air resistance and raises fuel consumption.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if necessary, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

Drive away without d

Do not wait for the engine
vehicle remains stationar
away, but at moderate en

This is the fastest way for
reach its operating tempe

Look well ahead whe

Avoid unnecessary accel

By maintaining a suitable
driving ahead of you.

Driving smoothly and lool
fuel consumption.

Use coasting conditions

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

On a downhill gradient, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

Switch off the engine during longer stops

Switch off the engine during longer stops, e.g., at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

Fuel savings are achieved after the vehicle is switched off for only approx. 4 seconds.

Switch off any functions that are not currently needed

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and consume additional fuel, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Therefore, switch off these functions if they are not actually needed.

Have maintenance carried out

Have vehicles maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle economy and operating life. Have the maintenance carried out by your service center.

Please also note the BMW Maintenance Sys-

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

149

Navigation

This chapter contains various examples of how the navigation system can guide you reliably to your destination.

Navigation*

Navigation system

General information

The navigation system can determine the precise position of the vehicle, with the aid of satellites and vehicle sensors, and can reliably guide you to every entered destination.

Navigation data are stored in the vehicle and can be updated.

⚠️ Entries in stationary vehicle

Enter data only when the vehicle is stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the ~~~
tion between traffic and ~~~
instructions issued by th~~~
Failure to take to this pr~~~
in violation of the law an~~~
and other road users in ~~~

Destination in~~~

Manual destination~~~

General information~~~

The system supports yo~~~
names and house numb~~~
completing the entry an~~~
parisons, refer to page 24.

Stored town/city and street names can be called up quickly.

▷ If the existing entries should not be changed, the entries for the state/province and town/city can be skipped.

▷ Destination guidance is started to the town/city center if no street is entered.

Entering a state/province

1. Press the MENU button.
2. "Navigation"

3. "Enter address"

4. Select "State/Province" or the displayed state/province.

~~~ity

~~~/Postal Code" or the dis-

~~~ecessary.

~~~d down further with each

3. Move the controller to the right.
4. Select the town/city name from the list.

If there are several towns/cities with the same name:

1. Change to the list of town/city names.
2. Highlight the town/city.
3. Select the town/city.

Entering the postal code*

1. Select "Town/City/Postal Code" or the displayed town/city.
2. 1@+ Select the symbol.

3. Select the numbers.
4. Change to the list of postal codes and towns/cities.
5. Highlight the entry.
6. Selecting an entry.

Entering a street and intersection

1. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
2. Enter a street and intersection in the same way as you would enter a town/city.

If there are several streets with the same name:

1. Change to the list of street names.
2. Highlight the street.
3. Select the street.

Alternative: enter the [...] and house number

1. Select "Street" or the [...]
2. Enter the street as yo[...]
3. "House number"
4. Select the numbers.
5. Change to the list of h[...]
6. Select a house numbe[...] numbers.

Street does not exist [...] city/town

The desired street does n[...] city/town because it belo[...] the city/town.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
4. Change to the list of street names.
5. Select "In" the displayed country.

All streets of the selected state/province are offered. The associated town/city is displayed after the street name.

6. Select the letters.
7. Change to the list of street names.
8. Highlight the street.

[...] n guidance after [...] ation

[...] n"

[...] "Add as another

[...] s a further destination,

[...] tion from the [...]

2. Address book

Contacts with addresses are displayed if these have been checked as destinations.

If the mobile phone* does not display the contacts with addresses, they must first be

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

153

checked as a destination, refer to page .

3. Select a contact in the list or, if desired, with "A-Z search".
4. "Business address" or "Home address"

Storing the destinat͏͏ book

After entering the destir͏ nation in the address b͏o

1. Open "Options".
2. "Store as new conta͏ contact"

3. Select an existing contact, if available.
4. "Business address" or "Home address"
5. Enter "Last name" and, if necessary, "First name".
6. "Store in vehicle"

Storing the position

The current position can be stored in the address book.

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".

3. "Store position as contact" or "Add position to contact"

4. Depending on the selection, choose an existing contact from the list. Select the type of address and enter the first and last name.
5. "Store in vehicle"

͏ g an address

͏y.

͏ or "Delete entry"

͏ddress as the

͏ust be stored. Specify the ͏ page .

3. Home

4. "Start guidance"

Last destinations

At a glance

The destinations previously entered are stored automatically.

The destinations can be called up and used as a destination for destination guidance.

Calling up the last destination

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"

Starting destination g[uidance]

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Select the destination
4. "Start guidance"

Editing the destinatio[n]

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Edit destination"

Deleting the last destinations

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry" or "Delete all last destinations"

Special destinations

Opening the search for special destinations

To select special destinations, e.g., hotels or tourist attractions:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Points of Interest"
3. Select the search function.

Online Search*

1. "Google™ Search"
2. Select a special destination.
3. 🕮 Select the symbol.

[...] town/city.

[...]"

[...]estinations, multiple cat-
[...]e selected. Move the
[...]: to leave the category

7. Enter the keyword.

   A list of the special destinations is displayed.

8. Select a special destination.

   Details are displayed.

   If multiple details are stored, you can leaf through the pages.

   If a phone number is available, a connection can be established if necessary.

9. 🕮 Select the symbol.

   "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"

   Add a destination as a further destination, refer to page 158.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

155

"Start search": if a search term is not entered, the search is repeated with the previous search term.

Category search

1. "Category search"
2. "Town/City"

   Select or enter the town/city.
3. "Category"
4. Select the category.
5. "Category details"

   For some special destinations, multiple category details can be selected. Move the controller to the left to leave the category details.
6. "Start search"

   A list of the special d
7. Select a special des

   Details are displayed

   If multiple details are
   through the pages.

   If a phone number is
   can be established i

8. 🐾 Select the symbo

   "Start guidance" or
   destination"

   Add a destination as
   refer to page 158.

Display of special destinations

List of special destinations: special destinations are organized by distance and are displayed with a directional arrow to the special destination.

on the split screen, special destinations of the selected category are displayed in the map view as symbols. The display depends on the scale of the map and the category.

Destination entry via BMW Assist*

A connection is established to the Concierge service, refer to page 235.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Open "Options".
4. "BMW Assist dest. entry"

Displaying special destinations in the map

To display symbols of the special destinations in the map view:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Display Points of Interest"
5. Select the setting.

by map

tination

on of the vehicle is indi-

ap"

4. Select the destination with crosshairs.

   ▷ To change the scale: turn the controller.
   ▷ To shift the map: move the controller in the required direction.
   ▷ To shift the map diagonally: move the controller in the required direction and turn it.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Specifying the street

If the system does not recognize a street, one of the following is displayed:

▷ The name of a street in the vicinity.

▷ The county.

▷ The coordinates of the destination.

Additional functions

Additional functions are available on the interactive map after the controller is pressed.

▷ <img> Select the symbol.

"Start guidance" or "A[...] destination"

Add a destination as [...] refer to page .

▷ "Exit interactive map" [...] view.

▷ "View in northern dire[...] driving direction"

▷ "Display destination":[...] around the destinatio[...]

▷ "Display current location": the map section around your current location is displayed.

▷ "Find points of interest": the search for special destinations is started.

Destination entry by voice*

General information

▷ Instructions for voice activation system, refer to page .

▷ When making a destination entry by voice, you can change between voice operation and iDrive.

▷ To have the available spoken instructions read out loud: ›Voice commands‹

Saying the entries

▷ the town/city, street, and house number can be entered as a single command*.

▷ Countries, towns and cities, streets, and intersections can be said as whole words* or spelled in the language of the system, refer to page .

   Example: to enter a town/city in a US state as a whole word, the language of the system must be English.

▷ Spell the entry if the spoken language and the language of the system differ.

[...] othly, and avoid exag-[...] ciation and inserting [...] ween the letters.

[...] le for entering data de-[...] ion data and the country [...] gs.

[...]s using a command*

[...] utton on the steering

[...] om the system.

[...] the suggested order.

[...] e entry as prompted by the system.

If necessary, individually name the separate components of the address, e.g., the town/city.

Entering a town/city separately

The name of the town/city can be said as a word* or spelled out.

With the destination entry menu displayed:

1. <img> Press the button on the steering wheel.

2. ›City‹ or ›Spell city‹.

3. Wait for the system to prompt you for the town/city.

4. Say the name of the town/city, or say at least the first three letters.

   Depending on the entry, up to 20 towns/cities may be suggested.

5. Select the town/city.

   ▷ To select a recommended town/city: ›Yes‹

   ▷ To select a different town/city: ›New entry‹

   ▷ Select an entry: ›Entry ...‹ e.g., entry 2

   ▷ To spell an entry: ›Spell city‹

6. Continue making the entry as prompted by the system.

If there are several towns/cities with the same name:

Towns/cities of the same ~~...~~ ...diate destination.
list and displayed as one ~~...~~
ellipsis.

1. Select an entry: ›Yes ~~...~~
   try 2.

2. Select the desired t ~~...~~

Entering a street or ~~...~~ separately

Enter a street and inters ~~...~~
as you would enter a tow ~~...~~

Entering a house nu ~~...~~

Depending on the data in ~~...~~
house numbers up to number ~~2000 can be~~ entered.

1. ›House number‹

2. Say the house number.

   Say each digit separately.

3. Continue making the entry as prompted by the system.

Planning a trip with intermediate destinations

New trip

A trip can be planned with several intermediate destinations.

---

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Move the controller to the left if necessary.
4. 🕊 "Guidance"
5. "Enter new destination"
6. Select the type of destination entry.

 ...diate destination.

...liate destinations

 ...intermediate destinations

 ...ation"

 ...destination entry.

 ...diate destination.

 ...lestination"

 ...destination is entered in ...t and is highlighted.

 ...r until the intermediate destination is located in the desired position in the list.

6. Press the controller.

Starting the trip

1. After all intermediate destinations are entered, highlight the first destination.

   If the second destination, for example, is highlighted when destination guidance is started, the first destination is skipped.

2. "Start guidance"

   🕊 This symbol marks the active leg of the trip.

Store the trip

Up to 30 trips can be stored in the trip list. If necessary, delete existing trips to be able to store new trips.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Store trip"
3. Enter the name.
4. "OK"

Select the stored trip

1. "Navigation"
2. "Stored trips"
3. Select a stored trip.
4. "Start guidance"

Reversing the directi

Intermediate destinations verse order in the list.

1. "Map"
2. 👣 "Guidance"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Reverse order of trip

Intermediate destina

1. "Map"
2. 👣 "Guidance"
3. "Display all trip destin
4. Select an intermediat
   - ▷ "Edit destination"
   - ▷ "Reposition dest. in the trip": move an intermediate destination to another position in the list.
   - ▷ "Delete dest. in the trip"
   - ▷ "Go to next dest. in the trip"

Some options are not available for certain trips.

Delete the stored trip

1. "Stored trips"
2. Highlight the desired trip.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete all trips" or "Delete trip"

Open the last trip

1. "Navigation"
2. "Stored trips"
3. "Last trip"
4. "Start guidance"

Destination guidance

Starting destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. Make a destination entry, refer to page 152.
3. "Accept destination"
4. "Start guidance"

on the Control Display.

destination/intermedi-
the estimated time of ar-
n the map view.

hown in the instrument
-up Display*, and on the
ere appropriate.

ation guidance

tion guidance

If the destination was not reached during the last trip, destination guidance can be resumed.

"Resume guidance"

Route criteria

General information

- ▷ The route calculated can be influenced by selecting certain criteria.
- ▷ The route criteria can be changed when the destination is entered and during destination guidance.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

159

▷ Road types are part of the navigation data and are taken into consideration when planning a route, e.g., avoid highways.

▷ The recommended route may differ from the route you would take based on personal experience.

▷ The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

▷ Destination guidance with traffic bulletins, refer to page 165.

Changing the route criteria

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. ⏱ /⚞ ⬈ "Route preference"
4. Select the criterion:

   ▷ ⏱ "Fast route": being a combina... sible route and t...

   ▷ /⚞ "Efficient ro... nation of the fas...

   ▷ ⬈ "Short route'... spective of how f... be.

   ▷ "Alternative rout... native routes are... tive route guidar... gestions are hig...

5. Specify additional criteria for the route, if necessary:

   ▷ "Avoid highways": highways are avoided wherever possible.

   ▷ "Avoid toll roads": toll roads are avoided wherever possible.

▷ "Avoid ferries": ferries are avoided where possible.

Route

Different views of the route are available during destination guidance:

▷ Arrow view in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display.

▷ List of route sections.

▷ Map view, refer to page 161.

▷ Arrow view in the Head-up Display*, refer to page 123.

Arrow view

The following information is displayed during ... ...nt direction of travel. ...ates the next change in di-

...xt change in direction. ...e next change in direction.

...he recommended lanes ...w view by a triangle. ...t lane.

▷ Empty triangle: possible lane. However, another lane change may be needed shortly.

Displaying list of route sections

When the destination guidance is started, a list of route sections can be displayed. The driving distances and traffic bulletins are displayed for each route section.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. Mark route section.

   The route section is displayed on the split screen.

160

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Bypassing a section of the route

Calculate a new route for a route section.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "New route for"

4. Turn the controller. En___ ___ ___ ___ of kilo-
   meters within which y___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
   to the original route.
5. Press the controller.

Resuming the origina___ ___ ___

If the route section should ___ ___ ___ ___
passed:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "New route for:"
4. "Remove blocking"

Gas station recomme___ ___

The remaining range is ca___ ___ ___ ___
essary gas stations along the route are dis-
played.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "Recommended refuel"

   A list of the gas stations is displayed.

4. Highlight a gas station.

   The position of the gas station is displayed
   on the split screen.

5. Select the gas station.

6. ⚑ Select the symbol.
7. "Start guidance": destination guidance to
   the selected gas station is started.

   "Add as another destination": the gas sta-
   tion is added to the route.

Switching spoken instructions on/off

The setting is stored for the remote control cur-
rently in use.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. 🔊 🔇 "Voice instructions"

Repeating spoken instructions

___ "Navigation"

___ ___ ___ ___mbol.

___ ___ twice.

___ ___ ___ nstructions

___ ___ while giving an instruc-
___ ___lume is set.

___ ___ instructions on the
___ ___nory buttons

___ ___ing the spoken instruc-
___ ___ed on a programmable
___ ___ page , for quick ac-

Map view

Selecting the map view

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

At a glance

1 Function bar
2 Route section with traffic obstruction
3 Traffic sign for traffic obstruction
4 Planned route
5 Current location
6 Upper status field
7 Lower status field

Lines in the map

Streets and routes are di...
ors and styles dependin...
Dashed lines represent ...
nections. Country borde...
lines.

Traffic obstructions

Small triangles along the ...
route sections with traffi...
ing on the map scale. Th...
gles indicates the direct...

The traffic signs indicate the significance of the obstruction.

▷ Red traffic sign: the obstruction affects the planned route or direction.

▷ Gray traffic sign: the obstruction does not affect the planned route or direction.

Traffic bulletins, refer to page .

Planned route

After destination guidance is started, the planned route is displayed on the map.

Status fields

Show/hide: press the controller.

▷ Upper status field: time, telephone, and entertainment details.

▷ Lower status field: symbol for active destination guidance, status of traffic bulletins, time of arrival, and distance to destination.

Function bar

The following functions are available in the function bar:

Symbol	Function
🐾 🐾	Start/end destination guidance.
🔊 🔇	Switch spoken instructions on/off.
🏃 🏃 🏃	Change the route criteria.
	... for a special destination.
	... the traffic bulletins.
	...tive map.
	... map view.
	... the scale.

...ction bar, move the con...

... section

...move the controller in the

▷ To shift the map diagonally: move the controller in the required direction and turn it.

Changing the scale

1. Q Select the symbol.
2. To change the scale: turn the controller.

Automatically scaled map scale

In the map view facing north, turn the controller in any direction until the AUTO scale is displayed. The map shows the entire route between the current location and the destination.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Settings for the map view

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Settings"

Set the map view.

▷ "Day/night mode"

Select and create the necessary settings depending on the light conditions.

"Traffic conditions/gray map" active: the setting is disregarded.

▷ "Satellite images"

Depending on availab[ ] satellite images* are [ ] approx. 1 mile to 600 [ ] 1,000 km.

▷ "Perspective view in 3[ ]

Prominent areas that [ ] navigation data are di[ ] 3D.

▷ "Traffic conditions/gr[ ]

The map is optimized [ ] bulletins, refer to page[ ] special destinations a[ ]

Map view for split sc[ ]

The map view can be sel[ ] screen independently from the main screen.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Split screen"
3. Move the controller to the right repeatedly until the split screen is selected.
4. Select "Split screen content" or the scale.
5. Select the map view.
   ▷ "Arrow display"
   ▷ "Map facing north"
   ▷ "Map direction of travel"
   ▷ "Map view with perspective"
   ▷ "Position"

▷ "Exit ramp view": selected blind driveways are displayed three dimensionally.

Setting in some cases will affect the display in the Head-Up Display*.

▷ "Traffic conditions/gray map"

6. To change the scale: select the split screen and turn the controller.

Traffic bulletins*

At a glance

▷ Display the traffic bulletins from radio stations that broadcast the TI Traffic Information of a traffic information service. Informa[ ] [ ] uctions and hazards is [ ] sly.

[ ] els equipped with navi-[ ] ability to display real-[ ] tion. If your system has [ ] llowing additional terms [ ] ly:

[ ] o longer have the right [ ] ata in the event that the [ ] erial breach of the terms [ ] tained herein.

[ ] work, a division of Clear [ ] ing, Inc. ("Total Traffic [ ] e rights to the traffic in-[ ] S-TMC network through [ ] l. You may not modify, copy, scan or use any other method to reproduce, duplicate, republish, transmit or distribute in any way any portion of traffic incident data. You agree to indemnify, defend and hold harmless BMW of North America, LLC. ("BMW NA") and Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc (and their affiliates) against any and all claims, damages, costs or other expenses that arise directly or indirectly out of (a) your unauthorized use of the traffic incident data or the RDS-TMC network, (b) your violation of this directive and/or (c) any unauthorized or unlawful activities by you in connection herewith.

B. Total Traffic Network traffic data is informational only. User assumes all risk of use. Total Traffic Network, BMW NA, and their suppliers make no representations about content, traffic and road conditions, route usability, or speed.

C. The licensed material is provided to licensee "as is," and "where is". Total Traffic Network, including, but not limited to, any and all third party providers of any of the licensed material, expressly disclaims, to the fullest extent permitted by law, all warranties or representations with respect to the licensed material (including, without limitation, that the licensed material will be error-free, will operate without interruption or that the traffic data will be   plied or statutory, in   tion, the implied war   bility, non-infringem   particular purpose,   course of dealing or

D. Neither Total Traf   BMW NA will be liabl   special, consequent   dental damages (inc   tion, lost revenues, a   profits relating to the   claim relating directl   the traffic data, and   work, Inrix, Inc., or BI   possibility of such d   tions apply to all clai

limitation, claims in contract and tort (such as negligence, product liability and strict liability). Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so those particular limitations may not apply to you.

▷ The traffic bulletins are indicated on the map by symbols.

▷ The traffic bulletins for the surrounding area are stored in a list.

⚠ The symbol in the function bar of the map view turns red if there are traffic bulletins that affect the calculated route.

Switching the reception on/off

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Receive Traffic Info"

Open the traffic bulletins

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. ⚠ "Traffic Info"

   First the traffic bulletins for the calculated route are displayed.

   The traffic bulletins are sorted by their distance from the current position of the vehicle.

            letin.

           ation": display additional

           or previous traffic bulletin

        n the map

        ay map" Active: indication   is switched to shades of   etter view of the traffic   ht mode is disregarded in   and special destinations

3. Open "Options".
4. "Settings"
5. "Traffic conditions/gray map"

Symbols in the map view

Depending on the scale of the map and the location of the traffic obstruction along the route, the symbols for the traffic obstructions are displayed.

Additional information in the map view

Depending on the map scale, a traffic obstruction's length, direction, and impact are displayed

in the map using triangles or gray bars along the calculated route.

▷ Red: congestion.

▷ Orange: stop-and-go traffic.

▷ Yellow: heavy traffic.

▷ Green: clear roads.

▷ Gray: general traffic bulletins, e.g., construction site.

The displayed information depends on the particular traffic information service.

Filtering traffic bulletins

You can set which traffic bulletins appear on the map.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Traffic Info categorie   n"
5. Select the desired cat

Traffic bulletins of the sel
played on the map.

▷ Traffic bulletins that are relevant to the route are always shown.

▷ For your own safety, traffic bulletins that notify you of potentially dangerous situations, such as wrong-way drivers, cannot be hidden.

Destination guidance with traffic bulletins

Semi-dynamic destination guidance

When traffic bulletin reception is switched on, semi-dynamic destination guidance is active.

The destination guidance system takes the available traffic information into account. A message is displayed depending on the route, the traffic bulletins, and the possible detour routes. A detour is suggested in the event of a traffic obstruction. In addition, distance and time differences between the original route and the detour are displayed.

To accept the detour:

❧ "Detour"

In the event of special hazards, e.g., objects on the road, a message is displayed without a detour suggestion.

Detours can also be accepted if the traffic messages are called up in the list.

on guidance

ally changed in the event

ot point out traffic ob-
e original route.

ntinue to be displayed on

type and the kind and
extent of the traffic obstruction, the calculated route may lead through the traffic obstruction.

▷ Dangerous situations are displayed regardless of the setting.

To activate dynamic destination guidance:

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Dynamic guidance"

165

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Navigation data

Information on the navigation data

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Navigation system version": information on the data version is displayed.

Updating the navigation data

General information

Navigation data and authorization codes are available from your service center. Navigation data are stored in the vehicle and can be updated.

- ▷ Depending on the d   date may take sever
- ▷ Update during the tr
- ▷ During the update, of the navigation sys
- ▷ The status of the up
- ▷ The system restarts
- ▷ The data carrier with be removed after the

Perform an update

1. Insert the navigation player with the label
2. Follow the instructio play.
3. Enter the authorization code of the navigation DVD and change the DVD if needed.

After interrupting your trip, follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Viewing the status

1. OPTION Press the button.
2. "Navigation update"

What to do if...

- ▷ The current transmission position cannot be displayed?

  The vehicle is located in an unrecognized region, is in a poor reception area, or the system is currently determining the position. Reception is usually best when you have an unobstructed view of the sky.

- ▷ The destination without street information is not used for route guidance?

  When city has been input, no downtown can be determined.

  Input any street in the selected city and start destination guidance.

  The destination i   not used for route guid-

  ata is not contained in the elect a destination that is le to the original.

  ation input cannot be se-

  o not contain the data of

  is as close as possible to

  ed in shades of gray?

  s/gray map" Active: indi-rol display is switched to is enables a better view of the traffic barriers.

- ▷ Spoken instructions are no longer output during route guidance in front of intersections?

  The area has not yet been fully recorded, or you have left the recommended route and the system requires a few seconds to calculate a new route suggestion.

166

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

167

Entertainment

s assure your enjoyment when
l television stations and playing
acks from the music collection.

Tone

General information

The sound settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Treble, bass, balance, and fader

▷ "Treble": treble adjustment.

▷ "Bass": depth adjustment.

▷ "Balance": left/right volume distribution.

▷ "Fader": front/rear volume distribution.

Setting treble, bass

1. "CD/Multimedia", "R

2. "Tone"

3. Select the desired to

4. To adjust: turn the controller.

5. To store: press the controller.

Equalizer*

Setting for individual audio frequency ranges.

Adjusting the equalizer

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"

2. "Tone"

3. "Equalizer"

4. Select the desired setting.

e controller.

e controller.

l playback,

eo and multi-channel play-

Setting multi-channel playback, surround

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"

2. "Tone"

3. "Surround"

When surround is activated, multi-channel playback is simulated when a stereo audio track is played.

Volume

▷ "Speed volume": speed-dependent volume control.

▷ "PDC": volume of the PDC signal* compared to the entertainment sound output.

▷ "Gong": volume of the signal, such as the safety belt reminder, compared to the entertainment sound output.

▷ "Microphone": volume of the microphone* during a phone call.

▷ "Loudspeak.": volume during a phone call.

The following volumes ar respective paired telepho "Loudspeak.".

Adjusting the volume

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Ra
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. Select the desired vol

5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

Resetting the tone settings

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Reset"

Opening the tone settings in the Options menu*

1. "CD/Multimedia" or "Radio"
2. If necessary, select additional entries, for example, "FM" or "CD/DVD".
3. Open "Options".
4. "Tone"
5. Set the desired tone.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

171

Radio

Controls

1 Change entertainment sources

2 Change station/track

3 Programmable mem

4 Volume, on/off

5 Change wave band

Sound output

Switching on/off

When the ignition is swit
button on the radio.

Muting

When the ignition is swi
is running: press the ON
radio.

AM/FM station

Selecting a station

1. "Radio"

2. "FM" or "AM"

3. Select the desired station.

All saved stations are stored for the remote control currently in use.

...ion via the button

...ton.

...red station.

4. Press the controller for an extended period.

5. Select the desired memory location.

The stations are stored for the remote control currently in use.

The stations can also be stored on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 23.

Selecting a station manually

Station selection via the frequency.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. "Manual"
4. To select the frequency: turn the controller.

To store the station: press the controller for an extended period.

RDS*

RDS broadcasts additiona[...]
the station name, in the F[...]
playing a station with mul[...]
system automatically swit[...]
with the best reception, if [...]

Switching the RDS o[...]

1. "Radio"
2. "FM"
3. Open "Options".
4. "RDS"

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

HD Radio™ reception*

Many stations broadcast both analog and digital signals.

License conditions

HD Radio™ technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U. S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

Activating/deactivating digital radio reception

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Open "Options".
4. "HD Radio Reception"

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

H)) This symbol is displayed in the status line [...]s digital.

[...]ation is not continuously [...], the playback switches [...]gital reception. Due to [...]ing, there may be repe-[...] In this case, switch off [...]

[...]al information

[...]st additional information [...]h as the name of the ar-

[...]station.

Selecting a substation

☐ This symbol indicates that a main station also broadcasts additional substations. The station name of the main station ends in HD1. Station names of the substations end in HD2, HD3, etc.

1. Select the desired station.
2. Press the controller.
3. Select the substation.

When reception is poor, the substation is muted for several seconds. If reception is interrupted for an extended period, it switches back to the main station.

Weather Band*

General information

The availability of the Weather Band and the number of available channels can vary depending on the region.

Switching on the Weather Band

1. "Radio"
2. "Weather band"
3. Select the desired channel.

Additional information

Weather Band is a service of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA). Additional information o
www.nws.noaa.gov.

Satellite radio*

General information

The channels are offere
ages. The packages mu
phone.

Navigation bar over

Symbol	Function
⟳ ⟳ ⟳	Change th
⟳	Select the category.
⟳	Direct channel entry
◑	Timeshift
☆ ☆*	Open the My Favorites category/ open a favorite.
☆+	Manage the favorites.
⌒	Traffic Jump

The functions of the navigation bar symbols can also be stored on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 23.

Managing a subscription

To be able to enable or unsubscribe from the channels, you must have reception. It is usually at its best when you have an unobstructed view of the sky. The channel name is displayed in the status line.

Enabling channels

The Unsubscribed Channels category contains all disabled channels.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. ⟳ "Category"

scribed Channels cate-

d channel.

er and an electronic serial displayed.

number to have the chan-

You can unsubscribe from the channels again via this phone number.

Unsubscribing from channels

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"

3. Open "Options".

4. "Manage subscription"

5. The phone number and an electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.

6. Call Sirius to unsubscribe from the channels.

Selecting channels

You can only listen to ena...

The selected channel is s...
control currently in use.

Via iDrive

1. "Radio"

2. "Satellite radio"

3. Select "All channels" ...
gory.

4. Select the desired ch...

Via the buttons on the center console

◁ ▷ Press the button.
The next channel is selected.

Via direct channel entry

1. "Radio"

2. "Satellite radio"

3. "Set channel"

4. Turn the controller until the desired channel is reached and press the controller.

Storing a channel

1. "Radio"

2. "Satellite radio"

3. If necessary, open "All channels" or the desired category.

4. Select the desired channel.

5. Press the controller again.

... again to confirm the
...l.

...memory location.

...d for the remote control

...be stored on the pro-
grammable memory buttons, refer to page 23.

Changing the list view

The list view changes every time the first symbol on the navigation bar is pressed.

Information on the channel is displayed.

Symbol	Meaning
⟨symbol⟩	Channel name
⟨symbol⟩	Artist
⟨symbol⟩	Track

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Selecting a category

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. ⛭ "Category"
4. Select the desired category.

Timeshift

Approx. one hour of the program being broadcast on the channel currently being listened to is stored in a buffer. Prerequisite: the signal must be available.

The stored audio track can be played with a delay following the live broadcast. When the buffer is full, the older tracks are overwritten. The buffer is cleared when a new channel is selected.

Opening the timesh

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. ⓟ "Replay - Time s

Symbol	Function
▷▷	Fast forward
◁◁	Reverse
🕙 🕙	Automatic timeshift deactivated/activated

Automatic timeshift

When the function is activated, audio playback is stopped automatically in the event of:

▷ Incoming and outgoing telephone calls.
▷ Activation of the voice activation system.
▷ Muting.

The audio playback then continues with a time

e shift"

ne shift"

utomatic time shift".

be stored in the favorites
s are artist, track, game,

▷ The red arrow show
   position.
▷ The time difference to the live broadcast is
   displayed next to the buffer bar.
   For live transmissions: "live".

track, or game

It is only possible to store favorites that are currently being broadcast. The channel information must be available.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. If necessary, open "All channels" or the desired category.
4. Select the desired channel.
5. Press the controller again.
6. Select the artist, track, or game.

Timeshift menu

Symbol	Function
🕙	Go to the live broadcast
▷ ‖	Playback/pause
▷|	Next track
|◁	Previous track

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Storing the league or team

Leagues or teams can be added to the favorites from a selection list.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. ✩⁺ "Manage favorites"
4. "Add sports information"

5. Select the league.
6. Select "Add all teams

Opening the favorites

If an activated favorite is p
lowing message appears
onds: "Favorite alert!".

✩★ "Favorites"

Select the symbol while t

The displayed favorite is played.

If there is no message, the system changes to the My Favorites category. All favorites currently being broadcast can be selected from a list.

Managing the favorites

Activating/deactivating the favorites

Favorites can be activated and deactivated globally and individually.

1. "Satellite radio"
2. ✩⁺ "Manage favorites"
3. Select "Activate alert" or the desired favorites.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Deleting favorites

1. "Satellite radio"
2. ✩⁺ "Manage favorites"
3. Highlight the desired favorite.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry"

ormation for a selected
ry few minutes.

egion.

the remote control cur-

ating the jump

2. "Satellite radio"
3. ⌒ "Jump to:"

Information for the selected region is broadcast as soon as it is available.

A new panel opens.

Canceling the Traffic Jump: "Cancel".

Symbol	Meaning
⌒ₒ	Information will be broadcast shortly.
⌒⌄	Information is currently being broadcast.

177

Select one of the symbols to deactivate Traffic Jump.

Automatic update

About twice a year, Sirius performs an update of the channel names and positions. The update takes place automatically and may take several minutes.

Notes

▷ Reception may not be available in some situations, such as under certain environmental or topographic conditions. The satellite radio has no influence on this.

▷ The signal may not be available in tunnels or underground garages next to tall buildings or near trees, mount sources of radio inte

Stored stations

General information

It is possible to store up

Calling up a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Select the desired s

Storing a station

The station currently selected is stored.

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"

3. "Store station"

4. Select the desired memory location.

The list of stored stations is stored for the remote control currently in use.

The stations can also be stored on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 23.

l station.

CD/multimedia

Controls

1 Change the entertainment source

2 CD/DVD* drive

3 Eject CD/DVD

4 Change station/track

5 Programmable memo

6 Volume, on/off

Sound output

Switching on/off

When the ignition is switcl
button on the radio.

Muting

When the ignition is switc
is running: press the ON/(
radio.

CD/DVD*

Playback

Filling the CD/DVD* player

Insert the CD/DVD with the printed side up.

Playback begins automatically.

Reading can take a few minutes with compressed audio files.

Starting playback

A CD/DVD is located in the CD/DVD player or DVD changer*.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.

g

)* player

anger*

) player, rear*

VD-R, DVD+R, DVD-
)-R DL, DVD+R DL, DVD
ly), DVD video*.

▷ CD: CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW, CD-DA, VCD*, SVCD*.

▷ Compressed audio files: MP3, WMA, AAC*, M4A*.

Audio playback

Selecting the track using the button

◁ ▷ Press the button repeatedly until the desired track is played.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Selecting a track via iDrive

Audio CDs

Select the desired track to begin playback.

CDs/DVDs* with compressed audio files

Depending on the data, ~~some letters or num~~
bers of the CD/DVD may ~~...~~
rectly.

1. Select the directory ~~...~~

   To change to a high~~...~~
   the controller to the ~~...~~

2. Select the desired tr~~ack to begin playback.~~

Displaying information on the track

If information about a track has been stored, it is
displayed automatically:

▷ Interpret.

▷ Album track.

▷ Number of tracks on the CD/DVD*.

~~...~~ CD or DVD*.

CDs/DVDs* with compressed audio files: All
tracks in the selected directory are played in
random order.

Random mode is switched off when the audio
source is changed and the ignition is switched
off.

Fast forward/reverse

 Press and hold the button.

Automatic repeat*

The selected CDs or DVDs are repeated automatically.

Video playback*

Country codes

Only DVDs with the code of the home region can be played back; also refer to the information on the DVD.

Code	Region
1	USA, Canada
2	Japan, Europe, Middle East, South Africa
3	Southeast Asia
4	Australia, Central New Zealand
5	Northwest Asia, N
6	China
0	All regions

Playback

The video image is displa
trol Display up to a speed
h; in some countries, it is
parking brake is set or if tl
mission is in position P.

DVD video

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"

3. Select a DVD with video content.
4. ![DVD icon] "DVD menu"

VCD/SVCD

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"

...deo content.

...track.

...u: turn the controller dur-

...en "Back" is displayed.

...e DVD menu.

...yback.

![icon]	Next chapter
![icon]	Previous chapter
![icon]	Fast forward
![icon]	Reverse

In fast forward/reverse: the speed increases every time the controller is pressed. To stop, start playback.

DVD menu

1. If necessary, turn the controller to open the video menu.

181

At a glance
Controls
Driving tips
Navigation
Entertainment
Communication
Mobility
Reference

2. 📀 "DVD menu"

   The DVD menu is displayed. The display depends on the contents of the DVD.

3. To select menu items: move the controller and press it.

To change to the video menu: turn the controller and press it.

DVD/VCD settings

For some DVDs, settings can only be made via the DVD menu; refer also to the information on the DVD.

Selecting the language*

The languages that are available depend on the DVD.

1. Turn the controller d

2. Open "Options".

3. "Audio/language"

Options
Switch off c
DVD video
Display Own
Audio/langu
Subtitles
Display setti
Additional

4. Select the desired la

Selecting the subtitles*

The subtitles that are available depend on the DVD.

1. Turn the controller during playback.

2. Open "Options".

3. "Subtitles"

4. Select the desired language or "Do not display subtitles".

Subtitles
Do not display subtitles
✓ German
English

Setting the brightness, contrast and color

1. Turn the controller during playback.

ntrast" or "Color"

r until the desired setting
ess the controller.

Display the video image on the entire screen.

1. Turn the controller during playback.

2. Open "Options".

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

3. "Additional options"

4. "Zoom mode"

Selecting a track

DVD video:

1. Turn the controller when the DVD menu is displayed.

2. Open "Options".

3. "Additional options"

4. "Select title"

5. Select the desired tra

VCD/SVCD:

1. 🔊 "Select track"

2. Select the desired tra

Selecting the camera a

The availability of a differe rtments
pends on the DVD and th

1. Turn the controller du

2. Open "Options".

3. "Additional options"

4. "Viewing angle"

5. Select the desired camera angle.

Opening the main menu, back

These functions are not contained on every DVD. Therefore, they may not be available for use.

DVD changer*

Above the glove compartment

Press the button.

The cover opens automatically.

To close: press the cover closed.

ays

rtments

mpartments

5 Fill DVD compartments

Filling the DVD compartments individually

1. LOAD Press the button.

   The LED on the first empty compartment flashes.

2. Select another compartment if necessary.

3. Wait for the LEDs on the DVD slot to flash.

4. Insert a single CD or DVD in the middle.

   The CD/DVD is drawn in automatically and placed into the selected compartment.

183

⚠️ Sliding in CDs/DVDs

Do not insert the CD/DVD until the LEDs on the DVD slot are flashing; otherwise, the CD/DVD or the DVD changer could be damaged.

Do not continue to push on the CD/DVD; this may cause it to jam and prevent it from being able to eject again.◀

Filling all empty DVD compartments

1. LOAD Hold the button down.

   The LEDs on the empty CD compartments flash.

2. Wait for the LEDs on the DVD slot to begin flashing and then insert each CD or DVD into the center of the slo

   The CDs/DVDs are c
   and placed into the

⚠️ Sliding in CDs/DVI

Do not insert the (
on the DVD slot are flash
DVD or the DVD change

Do not continue to push
may cause it to jam and
able to eject again.◀

After they are inserted, i
nutes for the CDs/DVDs

Removing a single (

1. ⏏ Press the button.
2. Select the DVD compartment.
   The CD/DVD is partially ejected.
3. Remove the CD/DVD.

Removing all CDs/DVDs

1. ⏏ Hold the button down.
2. Remove the CDs/DVDs.

Malfunctions

If all LEDs on the DVD changer are flashing rapidly, a malfunction has occurred.

To eliminate the malfunction:

1. Press one of the buttons:

   ▷ LOAD

   ▷ ⏏

   The CD/DVD last inserted is ejected.

2. Remove the CD/DVD.

The DVD changer is functional again after the LEDs stop flashing rapidly.

Audio playback*

The audio track of a DVD can be played back even if video playback is not possible in the vehicle.

out the previews or extras

e DVD changer.

DVD.

using the button

ton repeatedly until the
ter is played.

using iDrive

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired DVD.
4. Select the desired chapter.

Fast forward/reverse

◁ ▷ Press and hold the button.

Selecting the language*

The languages that are available depend on the DVD.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired DVD.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Audio/language"
6. Select the desired language.

Notes

CD/DVD player and changer

⚠ Do not remove the cover

BMW CD/DVD players and changers are officially designated Class 1 laser products. Do not operate if the cover is damaged; otherwise, severe eye damage may o

CDs and DVDs

⚠ Use of CDs/DVDs

▷ Do not use self-
with labels appli
come detached
to heat buildup a
able damage to

▷ Only use round CDs/[
diameter of 4.7 in/12 (
CDs/DVDs with an ad;
otherwise, the CDs or
and no longer eject.

▷ Do not use combined
Plus, as the CDs/DVDs can jam and will no
longer eject.◄

General malfunctions

▷ CD/DVD changers and players have been optimized for performance in vehicles. In some instances they may be more sensitive to faulty CDs/DVDs than stationary devices would be.

▷ If a CD/DVD cannot be played, first check whether it has been inserted correctly.

Humidity

High levels of humidity can lead to condensation on the CD/DVD or the laser's scan lens, and temporarily prevent playback.

Malfunctions involving individual CDs/DVDs

If malfunctions occur only with particular CDs/DVDs, this can be due to one of the following causes:

Home-recorded CDs/DVDs

▷ Possible reasons for malfunctions with home-recorded CDs/DVDs are inconsistent data creation or recording processes, or poor quality or old age of the blank CD/DVD.

)s on the upper side with
this purpose.

dust, scratches and

a sleeve.

/DVDs to temperatures
high humidity or direct

protection

ovided with a copy pro-
manufacturer. This can
VDs cannot be played or
can only be played to a limited extent.

MACROVISION

This product contains copyrighted technology that is based on multiple registered US patents and the intellectual property of the Macrovision Corporation and other manufacturers. The use of this copy protection must be approved by Macrovision. Media protected by this product - unless otherwise agreed with Macrovision - may only be used for private purposes. Copying of this technology is prohibited.

185

DTS Digital Surround™

Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent Numbers: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535 & and other patents granted and registered in the USA and worldwide. DTS and the logo are registered trademarks & DTS Digital Surround and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS Inc. © DTS, Inc. All rights reserved.

Music collection*

Storing music

General information

Music tracks from CDs/
can be stored in the mus
disc in the vehicle and p

▷ Audio CD: tracks are
   pressed audio forma
   tion on the album, s
   stored as well.

▷ CD/DVD or USB dev
   audio files: the entire
   or the USB device is
   an album. The WMA
   AAC* formats are st
   and directories can
   ing a track and direc

   Tracks with DRM co
   stored but cannot be

Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, please visit www.gracenote.com.

This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents: #5,987,525; #6,061,680; #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593, and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Storing from a CD/DVD

1. Insert a CD or DVD into the CD/DVD player.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "CD/DVD"
4. ⊚ Select the symbol for the CD/DVD player.
5. "Store in vehicle"

is displayed and the first
s played back. During the
racks are played in se-

during the storage proc-

CD/DVD player and do not
remove the CD/DVD from the CD/DVD player as this will interrupt the storage process. You can switch to the other audio sources without interrupting the storage process. Tracks from the current CD/DVD that have already been stored can be called up.

Interrupting storage

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

3. "Storing..."

4. "Cancel storing"

The storage process is interrupted and can be continued at any time.

Continuing the storage process

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. 🔘 Select the symbol f
4. "Continue storing"

Storage of the CD/DVD c
ning of the track at which
rupted.

Album information

During storage, informatic
the artist is stored with th
tion is available in the vehi
CD.

To update the database, c
center.

Storing from a USB device

To store music, a suitable device must be connected to the USB interface in the glove compartment.

▷ Suitable devices: USB mass storage devices, such as USB flash drives or MP3 players with a USB interface.

▷ Unsuitable devices: USB hard drives, USB hubs, USB memory card readers with multiple inserts, Apple iPod/iPhone. Music from the Apple iPod/iPhone can be played via the USB audio interface in the center armrest.

1. Connect the USB device to the USB interface in the glove compartment, refer to page 138.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "Music collection"
4. Open "Options".
5. "Music data import/export"
6. "Import music (USB)"

itional information has
essed by the music
additional information
corresponding album,

4. Select the desired category.

5. Select the desired entry:
   ▷ Select "A-Z search", refer to page 24, and input the desired entry.
   ▷ Select the desired entry from the list.
6. Select other categories if you wish.

   The tracks found are ... order.

   Not all categories ne... example, to search f... artist, call up that art... by that artist are the...
7. "Start play"

   The list of tracks is r...

Restarting the music s...

"New search"

Music search using sp...

Instructions for the voic... fer to page 25.

1. [button icon] Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Music search‹
3. Open the desired category, e.g., ›Select artist‹.
4. Say the desired entry in the list.
5. Select other categories if you wish.

To select a track directly: ›Title …‹.

Say the voice command and the name of the desired track in a single command.

Current playback

The list of tracks that was generated last by the music search, or the album that was selected last.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Current playback"

... track, if necessary.

... ly played tracks.

... track, if necessary.

... ed in order of their storage

⑤	Audio CD
⬜	Compressed audio files

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Select the desired album.

   Depending on the album, the tracks or the subdirectories of the album are displayed.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

The first track is played automatically, if possible.

4. Change directories if needed to select tracks.

   To go up a level in the directory: move the controller to the left.

Random playback

All tracks of the selection a[...] dom order.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Random"

Managing music

Albums

Renaming an album*

The name of the album, if available, is automatically entered when the album is stored. If the name is not available, it can be changed later if desired.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"

3. Highlight the desired album.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Rename album"

6. Select the letters individually.

Deleting an album

[...]leted while a track from [...]ed.

[...]d album.

[...]irectory

[...]ed while it is being

[...]eleted while a track from [...]layed.

2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the directory or track.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete folder" or "Delete track"

Free memory capacity

Display the free memory capacity in the music collection.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Free memory"

Music collection

Backing up the music collection

The entire music collection can be stored on a USB device. Make sure there is enough free memory capacity on the USB device.

Depending on the number of tracks, backing up the music collection may take several hours. Therefore, it is best to perform the backup during a long trip.

1. Starting the engine.
2. Connect the USB device to the USB interface in the glove compartment.
3. "CD/Multimedia"
4. "Music collection"
5. Open "Options".
6. "Music data import/

7. "Backup music on U

Storing the music collection in the vehicle

When storing from the USB device, the existing music collection in the vehicle is replaced.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".

4. "Music data import/export"
5. "Restore music from USB"

Deleting the music collection

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete music collection"

External devices

At a glance

Symbol	Meaning
	ort
	interface*
	one audio interface*
	audio*
	-IN port* on the left
	-IN port* on the right

▷ ...idio devices, e.g., MP3 ...l is output on the vehicle

▷ Recommendation: use medium tone and volume settings on the audio device. The tone depends on the quality of the audio files.

Connecting

The AUX-IN port is in the center armrest.

Connect the headphones or line-out connector of the device to the jack plug.

Playback

1. Connect the audio de
   select a track on the a
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. If necessary "External
4. ✎ "AUX front"

Volume

The volume of the sound
on the audio device. If this
edly from the volume of th
it is advisable to adjust th

Adjusting the volume

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. If necessary "External
3. ✎ "AUX front"
4. "Volume"

5. Turn the controller until the desired volume is set and press the controller.

USB audio interface*/mobile phone audio interface*

At a glance

It is possible to connect external audio devices. They can be operated via iDrive. The sound is output on the vehicle loudspeakers.

Connectors for external devices

▷ Connection via USB audio interface: Apple iPod/iPhone, USB devices, e.g., MP3 players, USB flash drives, or mobile phones that are supported by the USB audio interface.
▷ Connection via snap-in adapter when equipped with extended connectivity of the music player in the mobile phone: Apple iPhone or

▷ Playback lists: M3U, WPL, PLS.

Connection of Apple iPod/iPhone via USB audio interface

The USB audio interface is in the center armrest.

Connect using a flexible adapter cable.

Connect the Apple iPod/iPhone to the USB interface.

The Apple iPod/iPhone menu structure is supported by the USB audio interface.

Connection of a USB device via the USB audio interface

The USB audio interface

Connect using a flexible
the USB audio interface
against physical damage

Connect t
USB inter

After connecting for th

Information on all music
of music, as well as playback lists are transmitted into the vehicle. This may take some time, depending on the USB device and the number of tracks.

During transmission, the tracks can be called up via the file directory.

Number of tracks

Information from up to four USB devices or for approx. 36,000 tracks can be stored in the vehicle. If a fifth device is connected or if more than 36,000 tracks are stored, information on existing music tracks may be deleted.

Copy protection

Music tracks with integrated Digital Rights Management (DRM) cannot be played.

Playback

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the ♀ or ✍ symbol.

External devices

✓ ♀ JUKEBOX
✍ Handy
Gerät
AUX front

with the first track.

he CD cover for the music
ved after a few seconds.

via:

of music, artist, and, if
er, album, track.

B devices: file directory
omposer.

f they have been saved in

Starting the track search

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the ♀ or ✍ symbol.
4. "Search"
5. Select the desired category, e.g., "Genre" or "Artist".

   All entries are displayed in a list.

   ▷ Open "A-Z search" and input the desired entry. When a letter is entered, the results are filtered using this letter as the first letter. If multiple letters are entered,

all results that contain that sequence are displayed.

▷ Select the desired entry from the list.

6. Select other categories if you wish.

Not all categories need to be selected. For example, if all of the tracks by a certain artist are to be displayed, ca▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮ All of the tracks by tha▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮ played.

7. "Start play"

Restarting a track sear▮▮

"New search"

Playback lists

Calling up playback lists.▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the 👤 or 🖳 s▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮
4. 🎵 "Playlists"

Current playback

List of tracks currently being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the 👤 or 🖳 symbol.
4. 🎛 "Current playback"

Random playback

The current list of tracks is played back in random order.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"

3. Open "Options".
4. "Random"

Fast forward/reverse

◁ ▷   Press and hold the button.

Video playback*

At a glance

Video playback via snap-in adapter possible. They can be operated via iDrive. The sound is output on the vehicle loudspeakers.

Playback

The video image is displayed on the front Con-▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮d of approx. 2 mph/3 km/▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮is only displayed if the ▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮f the automatic trans-▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮

▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮ol.

▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮ if necessary.

▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮ner level directory: move ▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮e left.

▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮video file to begin play-

Video menu

Symbol	Function
▷|	Next video file
◁|	Previous video file
	Double-click on an icon to play back previous video file.

Notes

Do not expose the audio device to extreme environmental conditions, such as very high temperatures; refer to the audio device operating instructions.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Depending on the configuration of the audio files, e.g., bit rates greater than 256 kbit/s, the files may not play back correctly in each case.

Information on connection

▷ The connected audio device is supplied with a max. power of 500 mA if supported by the device. Therefore, do not additionally connect the device to a socket in the vehicle; otherwise, playback may be compromised.

▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.

▷ Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB audio interface.

▷ Do not connect USB hard drives.

▷ Do not use the USB charge external devi

Bluetooth audio*

At a glance

▷ Music files on extern devices or mobile ph back via Bluetooth.

Use of a mobile pho refer to page 213.

▷ The sound is output speakers.

▷ The volume of the s ent on the device. If volume on the devic

▷ Up to four external devices can be paired with the vehicle.

Requirements

▷ The device is suitable. Information under www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.

▷ The device is ready for operation.

▷ The ignition is switched on.

▷ Bluetooth is activated on the vehicle, refer to page 213, and on the device.

▷ Bluetooth presettings must be made on the device, such as for a connection without

confirmation or visibility; refer to the device operating instructions.

▷ A number with at least four and a maximum of 16 digits is defined as the Bluetooth passkey. It is only required once for pairing.

Pairing and connecting

⚠ Pairing a device

To avoid becoming distracted and posing an unnecessary hazard both to your own vehicle's occupants and to other road users, only pair the device while the vehicle is stationary.◄

1. "CD/Multimedia"

2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"

3. If necessary "Bluetooth® audio".

me of the vehicle is dis-

l steps on the device, refer ating instructions: for in- or connect the Bluetooth device or a new device.

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the device display.

6. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the device display.

Prompt via iDrive or the device to enter the same Bluetooth passkey.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

7. Enter the passkey and confirm.

8. Select the desired functions with which the device is to be connected, for instance "Audio".

9. "OK"

If pairing was successful, t...   ...as connected.

White symbol ♪ : the devi...
source.

If pairing was unsuccessfu...
to page 196.

Connecting a specifi...

A device that has already been paired can be connected as an active audio source.

Connecting is not possible when data is exchanged via a mobile phone connected via Bluetooth.

Requirements

If necessary, activate the audio connection of the desired device from the list of paired devices.

1. "CD/Multimedia"

2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"

3. If necessary, "Bluetooth® audio".

4. Select the desired device from the list of paired devices.

5. Open "Options".

6. "Configure phone"

7. "Audio"

8. "OK"

Connecting the device

1. "CD/Multimedia"

2. "Bluetooth® (audio)"

3. If necessary, "Bluetooth® audio".

4. Select the desired device from the list of paired devices.

...evice is active as an audio

...ic track information de-
...e.

▷ Operation can takes place on the device or iDrive.

▷ Playback is interrupted when data is exchanged via a mobile phone connected via Bluetooth.

Starting playback

1. Connect the device.

2. "CD/Multimedia"

3. "External devices"

195

4.   🛦 Select the symbol.

5.   Select the desired track from the list, if necessary.

Playback menu*

Depending on the particular device, some of the functions may not be av~~ailable~~.

Symbol	Function
▷|	Next track
	Fast forward: symbol.
◁|	Previous mus
	Reverse: pres

Disconnecting the a

1.   "CD/Multimedia"
2.   "Bluetooth® (audio)
3.   Highlight the desire
4.   Open "Options".
5.   "Configure phone"

6.   "Audio"
7.   "OK"

Unpairing a device

1.   "CD/Multimedia"
2.   "Bluetooth® (audio)"
3.   If necessary, "Bluetooth® audio".
4.   Highlight the device that is to be unpaired.
5.   Open "Options".
6.   "Remove phone from list"

What to do if...

Information on suitable devices can be found at www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.

The device is not supported by the vehicle.

▷   Perform a software update*, refer to
     ~~...~~ed.

     ~~...~~ be paired or connected.

     ~~...~~ passkeys on the device
     ~~...~~atch? Enter the same
     ~~...~~vice and via iDrive.

     ~~...~~than 30 seconds to enter
     ~~...~~eat the pairing procedure.

     ~~...~~etooth devices connected
     ~~...~~hicle? Delete connections
     ~~...~~s if necessary.

     ~~...~~ne in power-save mode or
     ~~...~~ limited remaining battery
     ~~...~~nobile phone in the snap-
     ~~...~~ne charging cable.

     ~~...~~ mobile phone, it is possible that only one device can be connected to the vehicle. Unpair the connected device from the vehicle and pair and connect only one device.

▷   The device no longer reacts? Switch the device off and on again.

▷   Repeat the pairing procedure.

Music cannot be played back.

▷   Start the program for playing back music data on the device and select a track on the device if necessary.

▷   Switch the radio off and on again.

Music files can only be played back softly.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

▷ Adjust the volume settings on the device.

Playback is disturbed when buttons are pressed or by other messages on the device.

▷ Switch off the button tones and other signal tones on the device.

Playback is interrupted by a telephone call or traffic bulletin and is not resumed automatically.

▷ Switch the radio off and on again.

Playback is not possible if the mobile phone is connected both via Bluetooth Audio and via the extended connectivity of the music player in the mobile phone*.

▷ Disconnect one of the two connections; for example, disconnect the audio connection, refer to page , and restart playback.

If all points in this list have ___ required function is still n___ contact the hotline or ser___

Software Update*

The vehicle supports vari___ depending on the current ___ a software update, the ve___ cell phones* or new exter___

The updating of the softw___

▷ USB*.

Updates and related ___ available at www.bmw___

▷ TeleService*.

Existing software can ___ the vehicle.

Displaying the current version

The currently installed software is displayed.

1. "Settings"
2. "Software update"
3. "Show current version"

SelectDesired version* to displayAdditional information*.

Updating software via USB*

The software may only be updated when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Store the file for the software-update in the main director of a USB flash drive.
2. Insert the USB flash drive into the USB interface of the USB audio interface in the center armrest. An update via the USB interface in the glove compartment is not possible.
3. "Settings"
4. "Software update"
5. "Update software"

___".

___tes are installed.

___via TeleService*

___ be updated when the ve-

___on.

3. "Software update"
4. "Update software"
5. If necessary "TeleService".
6. If necessary, "Start update".
7. "Start update"
8. "OK"

All listed software updates are installed.

To interrupt updating: "Cancel".

Restoring the previous version

If it should become necessary, the software version prior to the last software update can be restored.

197

The previous version may only be restored when the vehicle is stationary.

1. "Settings"
2. "Software update"
3. "Restore previous version"
4. "OK" Double-click.

All listed software updates are removed.

Note

While the software is being updated or a previous version is being restoredBMW Assist*, Office functions* and the connected devices are temporarily unavailable. Wait several minutes for the functions to become available again.

Rear audio rem

The concept

The rear audio remote control the following aud

▷ "Radio"
▷ "CD/Multimedia"

The unit is operated in t corresponding buttons

In the center armres

Storage is possible in a vertical or horizontal position in the center armrest.

Menu navigation

Press the button	Function
	Turn the wheel: adjusts the volume. Press the center knob: switches the sound on/off.
MODE	Changes the entertainment source.
◁	Changes the station, track or chapter.
▷	Press and hold the button: fast forward/reverse.

e of the remote control is cute a function again, ired button again.

teries

e batteries

argeable batteries, as om the substances in the

1. Remove the cover. Press on the cover, arrow 1, and push forward, arrow 2.
2. Insert batteries of the same type.
3. Close the cover.

Take the used battery to a recycling center or to your service center.

Rear entertainment*

Controls

1 Screen, left
2 Screen, right
3 Center armrest, remo
4 CD/DVD player

Rear CD/DVD pl

1 CD/DVD slot
2 Eject CD/DVD
3 On/off, right
4 Headphone connection, right
5 RCA sockets
6 Headphone connection, left
7 On/off, left

Switching the system on/off

| I/O | Press the left or right side of the button on the CD/DVD player in the rear for the respective page. |

Rear entertainment and screens are switched on/off.

After switching off the ignition, the system must be switched on again.

Screens

Adjusting

⚠ Danger of burns when screen is folded out
Do not reach behind the screen; otherwise, there is the danger of getting burned. The become very hot.◄

he bottom edge.

ainst the bottom edge.

screen edge, since this is where the sensors and the infrared interface are installed.

▷ When loading the rear seats and adjusting the backrest of the front seat, fold in the screens.

▷ When cleaning the screen, follow the care instructions, refer to page .

At a glance
Controls
Driving tips
Navigation
Entertainment
Communication
Mobility
Reference

199

Remote control

In the center armrest in the rear

Storage is possible in a vertical or horizontal position in the center armrest.

Menu navigation

Press the button	Function
	Operat... front c... Turn th... menu i... Press ... firm th... Pressi... spond... switch...
MENU	Open t...
BACK	Displays the previous menu.
OPTION	Opens the "Options" menu.
◁ ▷	Changes the station, track or chapter. Press and hold the button: fast forward/reverse.
– ▷ +	Adjusts the volume.
L ∩ R	Switches the volume adjustment to the left/right.

The transmission time of the remote control is limited by law. To execute a function again, press or turn the required button again.

Replacing the batteries

⚠ No rechargeable batteries

Do not use rechargeable batteries, as damage may result from the substances in the batteries.◄

... Press on the cover, ar- ...rward, arrow 2.

... the same type.

...battery to a recycling cen- ...service center.

...n be operated in the same ...the front. Special features of operating the system in the rear are described here.

Audio/video playback

Audio

Audio can be played back via rear entertainment from any source in the vehicle.

Operation is the same as for the front audio playback, refer to page 179.

Video

Video can be played back in the rear from the following sources:

▷ DVD changer*.

▷ Rear CD/DVD player.

▷ External device in rear.

If a video image is being played back in the rear, the rear CD/DVD player cannot be selected in the front.

Operation is the same as for the front video playback, refer to page 181.

Radio

When the same radio source is selected in the front and rear (e.g., FM/AM), the same radio station is played.

Operation is the same as for the front radio, refer to page 172.

CD/multimedia

CD/DVD

When the same audio souplayer, rear CD/DVD playe
lected in the front and rea
played.

Operation is the same as
refer to page 179.

Notes on CDs/DVDs, refe

Music collection*

Music can only be stored
exported and imported viplayer or the USB interfa
partment.

When music collections are selected in the front and rear, they are played back separately.

Operation is the same as for the front music collection, refer to page 186.

Tone

Only treble and bass can be set in the rear. The settings are made separately for the left and right headphones.

Operation is the same as for the front tone, refer to page 170.

Adjusting

The following settings are available:

▷ "Rear displays"

▷ "Language/Units": language can be set globally for all screens.

▷ "Tone"

Options menu

The split screen is not available and there is no Integrated Owner's Manual.

Operation is the same as for the front menu options, refer to page 21.

Enabling

in the rear

rive in the front.

priority.

Priority options

The driver has priority

▷ The source selected via iDrive in the front is output on the vehicle loudspeakers and can be selected but not operated from the rear. Other audio or video sources can be operated.

▷ Sound can only be output in the rear via headphones.

▷ The source that is to be displayed in the rear can be set via the iDrive in the front.

201

201
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 606 497 - 03 11 490

To set the source in the rear via the iDrive in the front:

1. "CD/Multimedia" or"Radio"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Select rear source"
4. Select the desired audio or video source.

Same priority

▷ All audio and video sources can be operated via the iDrive in the front and rear.

▷ Sound is output in the rear via headphones: the source selected via the iDrive in the front is output on the vehicle loudspeakers.

▷ Sound is output via loudspeakers: the source selected last ~~via the iDrive in the front~~ or rear is output via ~~the vehicle loudspeak-~~ ers.

The rear has priority

▷ When the source se ~~lected in the front is~~ played on headphon ~~es, it can be viewed~~ but not operated via ~~the iDrive. Any other~~ audio or video sourc ~~e ...~~

▷ Sound is output in th ~~e rear via headphones:~~ the source selected ~~via the iDrive in the rear~~ is output on the veh ~~icle loudspeakers.~~

▷ Sound is output via l ~~oudspeakers: the~~ source selected in th ~~e rear is output via the~~ vehicle loudspeaker ~~s. Other audio sour-~~ ces cannot be selec ~~ted via the iDrive in the~~ front.

Switching off the rear DVD

▷ Rear entertainment is switched off.

▷ To switch rear entertainment back on: select a different priority via the iDrive in the front and switch on the system, refer to page .

Headphones, vehicle loudspeakers

Connecting the headphones

Normal headphones

Connect via the jack 1/8"/3.5 mm, refer to page , on the rear CD/DVD player.

Infrared headphones

Connection via the infrared interface on the lower edge of the screen.

Fitting infrared headphones and information on which headphones are supported can be obtained from your service center.

~~... headphones, ensure that~~ ~~... en the headphones and~~ ~~... is not disrupted:~~

~~... obstacle between the inter-~~ ~~... nes.~~

~~... nterface.~~

~~... e interface.~~

~~... ns for interference-free re-~~

~~... ditions such as bright am-~~ ~~... reception.~~

~~... the headphones or~~ ~~... ers~~

~~... sible in the rear.~~

1. Open "Options".
2. "Headphones" or "Loudspeakers"

With the following setting, sound output in the rear is not possible via the vehicle speakers: "Driver control".

External devices

General information

External audio and video devices and digital cameras can be connected to cinch sockets, refer to page , on the CD/DVD player. Operation takes place on the external device.

Due to the large number of different audio and video devices available on the market, it cannot be ensured that every audio and video device will be displayed correctly on the screen.

Connecting an external device

1. Fold down the cover in front of the cinch sockets on the CD/DVD player.
2. Connect the external device to the RCA sockets.
   ▷ Video: yellow socket.
   ▷ Audio: white and red socket.

Starting playback

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the ♪AUX-L or ♪A...

Volume

The volume of the sound
on the audio device. If this
edly from the volume of th
it is advisable to adjust th

Adjusting the volume

The volume can only be a
video device is connected

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the ♪AUX-L or ♪A...
4. "Volume"

5. Turn the controller until the desired volume is set and press the controller.

What to do if...

Only a black screen is visible.

▷ Switch on the system.

There are no options available on the screen.

▷ Replace remote control batteries.

Radio stations or TV channels are grayed out and cannot be selected.

▷ Function is limited due to the selected priority. Change priority.

The DVD does not play.

▷ Playback does not begin automatically. Start DVD manually, refer to page .

The volume of the rear vehicle speakers cannot be adjusted.

output via the head-
iority if necessary and
hicle speakers.

At a glance
Controls
Driving tips
Navigation
Entertainment
Communication
Mobility
Reference

Professional rear entertainment*

Controls

1 Screen, left
2 Screen, right
3 Controller with butto
4 CD/DVD player

Rear CD/DVD p

1 CD/DVD slot
2 Eject CD/DVD
3 On/off, right
4 Headphone connection, right
5 RCA sockets
6 Headphone connection, left
7 On/off, left

Switching the system on/off

I/0 Press the left or right side of the button on the CD/DVD player in the rear for the respective page.

Rear entertainment and screens are switched on/off.

After switching off the ignition, the system must be switched on again.

Screens

Adjusting

⚠ Danger of burns when screen is folded out

Do not reach behind the screen; otherwise. there is the danger of getting burned. The ... n become very hot.◄

: the bottom edge.

gainst the bottom edge.

r screen edge, since this is where the sensors and the infrared interface are installed.

▷ When loading the rear seats and adjusting the backrest of the front seat, fold in the screens.

▷ When cleaning the screen, follow the care instructions, refer to page 273.

iDrive in the rear

Operation is the same as for the iDrive in the front, refer to page 19.

▷ To adjust the volume: turn, arrows 1.

▷ To activate the controller and switch between the screens: press the buttons, arrows 2.

A green LED indicates ... ... as for the front CD/DVD, and can be operated v...

Controls

Almost all functions can be ... ed and data can only be manner as they are in the ... via the front CD/DVD of operating the system in ... ... ace in the glove com-here.

Audio/video playback ... s are selected in the front ... d back separately.

Audio ... s for the front music col-

Audio can be played back ... 36.
from any source in the ve...cle.

Operation is the same as for the front audio playback, refer to page 179.

Video

Video can be played back in the rear from the following sources:

▷ DVD changer*.

▷ Rear CD/DVD player.

▷ External device in rear.

If a video image is being played back in the rear, the rear CD/DVD player cannot be selected in the front.

Operation is the same as for the front video playback, refer to page 181.

Radio

When the same radio source is selected in the front and rear (e.g., FM/AM), the same radio station is played.

Operation is the same as for the front radio, refer to page 172.

CD/multimedia

CD/DVD

When the same audio source (front CD/DVD player, rear CD/DVD player, DVD changer) is selected in the front and rear, the same material is ... ... efer to page 185.

Tone

Only treble and bass can be set in the rear for headphones. The settings are made separately for the left and right headphones.

Operation is the same as for the front tone, refer to page 170.

Navigation*

Route planning can be performed separately on the left and right sides in the rear. Destination guidance can only be started from the front.

Operation is the same as for the front navigation, refer to page 152.

At a glance
Controls
Driving tips
Navigation
Entertainment
Communication
Mobility
Reference

205

Suggesting a destination

A destination or trip can be sent to the front as a suggestion. The suggestion can be adopted, stored, or declined in the front. This function is not available with the following setting: "Driver control".

1. Enter the destination.
2. "Suggest destination"

Contacts

Operation is the same as for the front contacts.

BMW Assist

Operation is the same as for BMW Assist in the front, refer to page 234.

Adjusting

The following settings a

▷ "Rear display"

▷ "Language/Units": l
globally for all screen

▷ "Tone"

▷ "Climate"

Vehicle information

Computer content can b
is only possible in the fr

Options menu

The split screen is not a
Integrated Owner's Manual.

Operation is the same as for the front menu options, refer to page 21.

Enabling

Enabling operation in the rear

Only possible via the iDrive in the front.

1. "Settings"
2. "Allow rear control"

3. Select the desired priority.

Priority options

The driver has priority

▷ The source selected via iDrive in the front is output on the vehicle loudspeakers and can ___ ot operated from the rear.
___ eo sources can be oper-

___ e output in the rear via

___ to be displayed in the rear ___ iDrive in the front.

___ he rear via the iDrive in the

___ or "Radio"

___ :e"

___ l audio or video source.

Same priority

▷ All audio and video sources can be operated via the iDrive in the front and rear.

▷ Sound is output in the rear via headphones: the source selected via the iDrive in the front is output on the vehicle loudspeakers.

▷ Sound is output via loudspeakers: the source selected last via the iDrive in the front or rear is output via the vehicle loudspeakers.

The rear has priority

▷ When the source selected in the rear is played on headphones, it can be selected but not operated via iDrive in the front. Other audio or video sources can be operated.

▷ Sound is output in the rear via headphones: the source selected via the iDrive in the front is output on the vehicle loudspeakers.

▷ Sound is output via loudspeakers: the source selected in the rear is output on the vehicle loudspeakers. Audio or video sources cannot be selected via the iDrive in the front.

Switching off the rear DVD

▷ Rear entertainment is switched off.

▷ To switch rear enterta a different priority via and switch on the sys page 204.

Headphones, ve loudspeakers

Connecting the head

Normal headphones

Connect via the jack 1/8" page 204, on the rear CD.

Infrared headphones

Connection via the infrared interface on the lower edge of the screen.

Fitting infrared headphones and information on which headphones are supported can be obtained from your service center.

When using infrared headphones, ensure that the connection between the headphones and the infrared interface is not disrupted:

▷ Do not place an obstacle between the interface and headphones.

▷ Do not cover the interface.

▷ Do not scratch the interface.

Fold up display screens for interference-free reception.

Unfavorable light conditions such as bright ambient light can impair reception.

Sound output on the headphones or vehicle loudspeakers

Operation is only possible in the rear.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Headphones" or "Loudspeakers"

With the following setting, sound output in the rear is not possible via the vehicle speakers: "Driver control".

es

n

o devices and digital ted to cinch sockets, re-CD/DVD player. Opera-external device.

er of different audio and on the market, it cannot audio and video device tly on the screen.

ernal device

r in front of the cinch DVD player.

2. Connect the external device to the RCA sockets.

   ▷ Video: yellow socket.
   ▷ Audio: white and red socket.

Starting playback

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the $\mathcal{K}_{AUX-L}$ or $\mathcal{K}_{AUX-R}$ symbol.

Volume

The volume of the sound output is dependent on the audio device. If this volume differs mark-

edly from the volume of the other audio sources, it is advisable to adjust the volumes.

Adjusting the volume

The volume can only be adjusted if no external video device is connected.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the $\not\!\!k_{\text{AUX-L}}$ or $\not\!\!k_{\text{AUX-R}}$ symbol.
4. "Volume"

5. Turn the controller u   is set and press the

What to do if...

Only a black screen is vi

▷ Switch on the system

There are no options av

▷ Switch over between

Radio stations or TV ch and cannot be selected.

▷ Function is limited due to the selected priority. Change priority.

The DVD does not play.

▷ Playback does not begin automatically. Start DVD manually, refer to page 181.

The volume of the rear vehicle speakers cannot be adjusted.

▷ Sound in the rear is output via the headphones. Change priority if necessary and output sound via vehicle speakers.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

209

Communication

...ions available to you for mobile... ...n with family, friends, business... ...vice providers are described in this chapter.

Telephone*

At a glance

The concept

Mobile phones or other external devices such as audio players can be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth.

After these devices are paired once, they are recognized automatically when the ignition is switched on as soon as they are inside the vehicle and can be operated via iDrive, the buttons on the steering wheel, and via voice activation*.

Depending on their functionality, external devices can be used via the
or as an audio source.

The telephone functions
following. Operating the
page 194.

Up to four external devic

Certain functions may ne
mobile phone provider o

⚠ Using the mobile
Make entries only
conditions allow. Do not
in your hand while you a
hands-free system inste
serve this precaution, yo
hicle occupants and oth

Snap-in adapter*

The snap-in adapter is used to:

▷ Hold the mobile phone.

▷ Recharge the battery.

▷ Connect the mobile phone to an outside antenna of the vehicle.

This provides for better network reception and consistent sound quality.

Approved mobile phones

Details on which mobile phones and external devices with a Bluetooth interface are supported by the mobile phone preparation pack-

age can be obtained at www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number

The vehicle identification number and software part number are needed to determine which mobile phones are supported by the mobile phone preparation package. The software version of the mobile phone may also be required.

1. "Telephone"

2. Open "Options".

3. '

nformation"

ile phones with a certain
port the vehicle functions

ur with other mobile
rsions.

le phone that is connected
nobile phone keypad, as
function.

n be performed if neces-

ring the mobile phone

General information

The following functions are available:

▷ Use of a mobile phone as a telephone.

▷ Use of a mobile phone as an additional telephone.

▷ Use of a mobile phone as an audio source.

▷ Use of an audio device as an audio source, refer to page 194.

Requirements

▷ The mobile phone is suitable.

▷ The mobile phone is ready for operation.

▷ Bluetooth is activated in the vehicle and on the mobile phone.

▷ Bluetooth presettings may need to be made on the mobile phone, e.g., for a connection without confirmation or visibility, refer to the mobile phone operating instructions.

▷ Deactivate Bluetooth audio if necessary.

▷ A number with at least four and a maximum of 16 digits was defined as the Bluetooth passkey. It is only required once for pairing.

▷ The ignition is switched on.

Activating/deactivating Bluetooth

Bluetooth is not permitted everywhere. Comply with all safety guidelines

1. "Telephone"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Bluetooth®"

Additional functions

General information

Activate the functions bef
to use them in the vehicle
able mobile phones, refer
port these functions.

Additional telephone

A mobile phone can be us
telephone.

The additional telephone can be used to accept incoming calls, refer to page 216. While a call is active on the additional telephone, incoming calls are displayed on the Control Display.

Audio source

A mobile phone can be used as an audio source.

Activating/deactivating the additional functions

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"

3. Open "Options".
4. Select the desired additional function.
   ▷ "Additional telephone"
   ▷ "Office"
   ▷ "Bluetooth® audio"

Pairing and connecting a device

⚠ Pairing a device

To avoid becoming distracted and posing an unnecessary hazard both to your own vehicle's occupants and to other road users, only pair the device while the vehicle is stationary.◀

Pair the vehicle entirely on the front or rear Control Display.

e)"

e of the vehicle is dis-

al steps on the mobile
mobile phone operating
tance, search for or con-
device or a new device.

e of the vehicle appears
e display.

h name of the vehicle on
isplay.

the mobile phone to en-
for the same Bluetooth passkey.

6. Enter the passkey and confirm.

7. Select the functions for which the mobile phone is to be used.

8. "OK"

If the pairing was successful, the mobile phone appears at the top of the list of mobile phones.

The functions supported by the mobile phone and audio device are displayed as symbols when paired.

White symbol: the function is active.

Gray symbol: the function is inactive.

Symbol	Function
✍	Telephone.
✎	Additional telephone.
♫	Audio source.

Four devices can be paired with the vehicle at once. Three devices car ... vehicle at once.

If pairing was unsuccess... to page 214.

Following the initial ...

▷ The mobile phone is ... the vehicle within a s... when the engine is r... switched on.

▷ The phone book ent... stored on the SIM ca... transmitted to the ve... depending on the m...

▷ Four devices can be ...

▷ Specific settings ma... mobile phones, e.g., authorization or a secure connection; refer to the mobile phone operating instructions.

Connecting a specific device

If more than one device is detected by the vehicle, the device at the top of the list is connected. A different device can be connected by selecting it.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"
3. Select the device that is to be connected.

The functions that were assigned to the device before unpairing are assigned to the device when it is reconnected. If the device is already connected, these functions are deactivated.

Configuring the devices

Additional functions can be activated or deactivated for paired and connected devices.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"
3. Highlight the device to be configured.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Configure phone"
6. At least one function must be selected.

... lephone"

... d to a device, the function ... ere appropriate for a de-... nnected and the device will

... phone and additional

... ephone and additional tel-... ed automatically.

... ne)"

3. "Swap phone/addit. phone"

Unpairing a device

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth® (phone)"
3. Highlight the device that is to be unpaired.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Remove phone from list"

What to do if...

Information on suitable mobile phones, refer to page 212.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

The mobile phone could not be paired or connected.

▷ Is Bluetooth activated in the vehicle and on the mobile phone? Activate Bluetooth in the vehicle and on the mobile phone.

▷ Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the mobile phone and the vehicle match? Enter the same passkey on the mobile phone and via iDrive.

▷ Did it take longer than 30 seconds to enter the passkey? Repeat the pairing procedure.

▷ Are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone or vehicle? Delete connections with other devices if necessary.

▷ Is the audio connection activated? Deactivate the audio conne

▷ Is the mobile phone in does it have only a lim life? Charge the mobi in adapter* or via the

▷ Depending on the mo ble that only one devi to the vehicle. Unpair from the vehicle and p one device.

▷ The mobile phone no the mobile phone off the pairing procedure

The telephone functions

▷ Is the mobile phone p telephone and is the a function deactivated? Activate the function.

▷ Is an outgoing call not possible? Connect the mobile phone as a telephone.

No or not all phone book entries are displayed, or they are incomplete.

▷ Transmission of the phone book entries is not yet complete.

▷ It is possible that only the phone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card* are transmitted.

▷ It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.

▷ The number of phone book entries being stored is too high.

▷ Is the data volume of the contact too large, e.g., due to stored information such as notes? Reduce the data volume of the contact.

▷ Is the mobile phone connected as an audio source or additional telephone? The mobile phone must be connected as a telephone.

The phone connection quality is poor.

▷ The strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile phone can be adjusted, depending on the mobile phone.

▷ Insert the mobile phone into the snap-in adapter* or place it in the area of the center

of the microphone and ately.

ve been checked and the not available, please ervice center.

ne

desired volume is se- ored for the remote con-

lly adjusts the volume of telephone and the volume of the called party. Depending on the mobile phone, the volumes may need to be adjusted. The settings can only be created during a call and must be adjusted separately for each telephone. The settings are deleted when the telephone is unpaired.

1. "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. Select the desired setting: "Microphone" or "Loudspeak."
5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

Incoming call

Receiving calls

If the number of the caller is stored in the phone book and is transmitted by the network, the name of the contact is displayed. Otherwise, only the phone number is displayed.

If more than one phone number is assigned to a contact, only the name of the contact is displayed.

For calls on the additional telephone, the number is only displayed if it is transmitted by the network.

An incoming call to the additional telephone is automatically rejected if there is an active call on the other telephone.

Accepting a call

Via iDrive

↘ "Accept"

Via the button on the steering wheel

📞 Press the button.

Via the instrument cluster*

"Accept"

Rejecting a call

Via iDrive

✆ "Reject"

Via the instrument cluster*

"Reject"

Ending a call

Via iDrive

↘ "End call"

Via the button on the steering wheel

Press the button.

...luster*

...number

...individually.

...bol.

The phone number can also be entered by voice.

Calls with multiple participants

General information

You can switch between calls or connect two calls to a single conference call. These functions

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

must be supported by the mobile phone and service provider.

Accepting a call while speaking to another party

This function might have to be activated by the service provider and the mobile phone must be adjusted accordingly.

If a second call comes in during an ongoing call, a call waiting signal is sounded where appropriate.

 "Accept"

The call is accepted and the existing call is put on hold.

Establishing a secon~~d call~~"

Establish an additional ca

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. "Hold"

    The existing call is pu

4. Dial the new phone number or select it from a list.

 "Return"

The call on hold is resumed.

Switching between two calls, hold call

The active call is displayed in color.

The call on hold is displayed in gray.

 "Swap calls"

The call on hold is resumed.

Establishing a conference call

Two calls can be connected to a single telephone conference call.

1. Establish two calls.
2. "Conference call"

When terminating a conference call, both calls are ended. If one call is terminated by another party, the other call can be continued.

Switching the microphone to mute

When a call is active, the microphone can be muted.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"

~~ute"~~

~~been switched to mute~~
~~ated:~~

~~ction is established.~~

~~tween call parties.~~

~~be used for gaining ac-~~
~~es or for controlling devi-~~
~~ote inquiry of an answer-~~
~~F code is needed for this~~

~~from a list or "Dial~~

3. "Keypad dialing"
4. Enter the DTMF code via iDrive.

Phone book

Displays

The phone book accesses the contacts and shows all contacts for which a phone number has been stored. The entries can be selected to make a call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Phone book"

217

A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts.

```
⌁ Phone book
    🔍 A-Z search
  Angi
  BMW Service
  Christoph            ⑧
  Dr. Tom              ⑧
  Mustermann           ⑧
  Office               ⑧
```

Calling a contact

Symbol	Meaning
✎	Contact with o... ...ber.
▯	Contact with ... phone numbe...
✗	Call not possi... out reception... Request* is a...

For contacts with one st... lect the required contac... ing established.

For contacts with more... number: select the requ... phone number. The con... lished.

Editing a contact

Changing the entries in "Contacts". When a contact is changed, the changes are not stored on the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle.

1. Highlight the contact.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Edit entry"

The contact can be edited.

Redialing

General information

The list of dialed numbers in the mobile phone is transmitted to the vehicle depending on the mobile phone. The 20 phone numbers dialed last are displayed. The sorting order of the phone numbers depends on the particular mobile phone.

Dialing the number via the instrument cluster

This is possible when there is no active call.

1. 📞 Press the button on the steering wheel.

...l phone number.
...ablished.

...via iDrive

...entry and the phone num-

...ablished.

...the contacts

...y.

...tact" or "Add to existing contact"

4. Select ✎ "New phone number" or contact.
5. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business", "Mobile" or "Other"
6. Complete the entries if necessary.
7. If necessary, "Store contact in vehicle".

Received calls

Displaying calls

The 20 calls that were last received are displayed.

1. "Telephone"

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

2. "Received calls"

Calling a number from the list

Selecting an entry.

The connection is established.

Saving an entry in the ~~contact~~

1. Highlight the entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contac ... contact"
4. Select ✎ "New phon ...
5. Select the type of nur ... "Business", "Mobile" ...
6. Complete the entries ...
7. If necessary, "Store c ...

Hands-free system

General information

Calls that are being made ...
system can be continued on the mobile phone and vice versa.

From the mobile phone to the hands-free system

Calls that were begun outside of the Bluetooth range of the vehicle can be continued on the hands-free system with the ignition switched on.

Depending on the mobile phone, the system automatically switches to the hands-free system.

If the system does not switch over automatically, follow the instructions on the mobile phone dis-

play; refer also to the mobile phone operating instructions.

From the hands-free system to the mobile phone

Calls that are made on the hands-free system can in some cases be continued on the mobile phone; this depends on the mobile phone.

Follow the instructions on the mobile phone display; refer also to the mobile phone operating instructions.

Voice operation*

Vehicles equipped with the voice activation sys- ...

... with the voice activation
... the equipment, the mo-
... operated as described

... ands in the operating
... to this type of voice op-

... can be operated without
... rom the steering wheel.

... entries are accompanied
... or questions.

... ns for voice operation.

Using voice activation

Activating the voice activation system

1. ▥ Briefly press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Say the command.

Terminating the voice activation system

▥ Briefly press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

219

Possible commands

Having possible commands read aloud

Press the button. ›Help‹. Possible commands are announced.

The digits from zero to nine are recognized. The digits can be spoken separately or combined in a sequence to accelerate the entry.

Using alternative commands

The system often recognizes a number of different commands to run a function; for instance:

›Dial name‹ or ›Name‹

Example: dialing a phone number

1. ((ᶜ)) Briefly press steering wheel.

2. ›Dial number‹

   The system says: »F

3. E.g., ›123 456 790‹

   The system says: »1 «

4. ›Dial‹

   The system says: »D

Calling

Dialing a phone num

1. ›Dial number‹

2. Say the phone number.

3. ›Dial‹

Correcting the phone number

The sequence of digits can be deleted after the system has repeated the digits.

›Correct number‹

The command can be repeated as often as necessary.

Deleting a phone number

›Delete‹

All digits entered up to that point are deleted.

Redialing

›Redial‹

Voice phone book*

Depending on how your vehicle is equipped, it may be necessary to create your own voice phone book.

The entries must be entered using voice activation and are separate from the memory in the mobile phone. Up to 50 entries can be set up.

Saving an entry

1. ›Save name‹

2. Say the name. Do not exceed the speaking duration of approx. 2 seconds.

   nber after being prompted stem.

   r being prompted to do so.
   with ›Yes‹.

   s
   k‹
   eting the phone book is

   with ›Yes‹.

   Confirm the query again with ›Yes‹.

Reading and selecting entries

1. ›Read phonebook‹

   The dialog for reading the phone book is opened.

2. Say ›Dial number‹ when the desired entry is read.

Selecting an entry

1. ›Dial name‹

2. Say the name after being prompted to do so.

3. Confirm the query with ›Yes‹.

Adjusting the volume

Turn the knob during an announcement.

▷ The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.

▷ The volume is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Notes

Do not use the voice operation to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection.

Instead, use the SOS button*, refer to page , in the vicinity of the interior mirror.

Environmental condi

▷ Say the commands, n
smoothly and with no
sis, and speed.

▷ Always say command
the system. The langu
phone voice operation
be changed in the Co

▷ Keep the doors, wind
roof* closed to preven

▷ Avoid making other n
while speaking.

Snap-in adapte

Installation position

In the center armrest.

Inserting the snap-in adapter

1. Press the button and remove the cover.

2. Insert the snap-in adapter at the front, arrow 1, and press down, arrow 2, until it engages.

e phone

nobile phone, remove
rom the antenna con-
e phone.

one with the buttons fac-
on of the electrical con-
nd push downward, arrow 2 until it engages.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Removing the mobile phone

Press the button and remove the mobile phone.

Office*

At a glance

General information

Contacts, appointments, tasks, notes, text messages, and e-mails from the mobile phone can be displayed on the Control Display if the mobile phone provides compatible support of these functions and the necessary Bluetooth standards.

Information about which mobile phones support the Office functions can be found at www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth. A limited number of compatible mobile phones is available for Office.

Contents are only displayed while the vehicle is stationary.

The mobile phone has read...

⚠️ Do not use Office w... To avoid becoming an unnecessary hazard to... pants and to other road u... use the controls or enter ir... fic and road conditions all...

Requirements

▷ A suitable mobile pho... vehicle and connected... phones, data access must be confirmed on the mobile phone.

▷ The time, time zone, and date, refer to page 80, are correctly set on the Control Display and on the mobile phone to correctly display appointments, for example.

▷ Office is activated, refer to page 213.

Updating

Data are updated every time the mobile phone is connected to the vehicle. Appointment entries, tasks, notes and reminders can be updated separately.

1. "Office"
2. "Current office", "Calendar", "Tasks", "Notes" or "Reminders"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Update data"

   Cell phone data are transmitted again to the vehicle.

Office information

The number of unread messages and active ... oming appointments are ...

... entry to display details.

Contacts

At a glance

Contacts can be created and edited. The contacts from the mobile phone* are displayed as well if this function is supported by the mobile phone. Addresses can be adopted as destinations for navigation and the phone numbers can be dialed.

Displaying contacts

General information

1. "Office"

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

223

2. "Contacts"

All contacts are listed in alphabetical order. Depending on the number of contacts, an A-Z search is offered, refer to page 24.

A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts:

Symbol	Storage lo...
No symbol	In the vehic... been chec...
ⓐ	In the vehic... been chec...
⑧	Mobile pho...

Dialing phone numb...

1. Select the desired c...

2. Select the phone nu...

   The connection is e...

Editing a contact

1. Select the desired contact.

2. "Edit contact"

3. Change the entries.

4. "Store contact in vehicle"

When a contact is edited, the changes are not stored on the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle.

Selecting the contact as a navigation destination*

1. Select the desired contact.

2. Select the address.

   When contacts from the mobile phone are used, the address may need to be matched to the navigation data contained in the vehicle. In this case:

   Correct the address.

3. "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"

...ress as a destination*

...be used for destination ...the navigation data con... The address can be ...ose.

...l contact and highlight the

..."ation"

...the address if necessary.

...cted and stored, a copy of ...cle. The address is not ...e phone.

New contact

General information

A contact can have up to 8 phone numbers, 2 addresses, 3 e-mail addresses and one Internet address.

1. "Office"

2. "Contacts"

3. Open "Options".

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

4. "New contact"

5. The entry fields are still filled with the previous entries: "Delete input fields"

6. Fill in the entry fields: select the symbol next to the entry field.

7. Enter the text and assign the contact type.

8. If the vehicle is equipp... system: Enter the add... contained in the navig... cle can be entered. Th... nation guidance is po... dresses.

   If necessary, "Accept...

9. "Store contact in vehi...

Contact types

Various contact types can... numbers and addresses.

Symbol	Meaning
📞	Home phone...
📞	Business phone number.
📞	Mobile phone number.
✎	Other phone number.
🏠	Home address.
🏢	Business address.

Specifying the home address

A home address can be stored. It appears at the top of the contact list.

1. "Home"

2. Create a contact.

3. "Store contact in vehicle"

Selecting the sorting order of the names*

Names can be displayed in a different order.

1. "Office"

2. "Contacts"

3. Open "Options".

4. "Display: last, first name" or "Display: first, last name"

Depending on how the contacts were stored on the mobile phone, the sorting order of the names may differ from the selected sorting order.

Show contact pictures

...e contacts are stored in ...obile phone is connected ...ber of transmitted pic- ...obile phone. The mobile ...is function.

...ctures is activated or de-

...g contacts

...ed and imported via the Personal Profile, refer to page 33. The contacts stored in the vehicle are exported, but not those from the mobile phone.

Deleting contacts

Only contacts that are stored in the vehicle are deleted. The contacts on the mobile phone* cannot be deleted.

1. "Office"

2. "Contacts"

3. Highlight the contact.

4. Open "Options".

225

5. "Delete contact"or "Delete all contacts".

6. If necessary. "Yes"

Messages

General information

Whether or not text messages and e-mails from the mobile phone are displayed depends on whether transmission from the mobile phone to the vehicle is supported. Text messages and e-mails may not be supported by the service provider, or the function may need to be enabled separately. After the mobile phone is first paired, transmission may take several minutes. Messages are only displayed in full length when the vehicle is stationary. Me
tional telephone are not

Display of different mes

▷ Text messages.

▷ My Info* messages
   Portal.

▷ Messages from the
   service*.

▷ Messages from BM\

▷ E-mails from the mc

Displaying message

1. "Office"

2. "Messages"

A symbol identifies the type of message.

Symbol	Message type
✉	Text messages.
✉ⁱ	My Info
✉ⁱ	Message from the Concierge service.
✉ⁱ	Message from BMW Info.
✉@	E-mail from mobile phone.

Filtering the message list

The message list can be filtered, when more than one type of message exists.

1. "Filter:"

2. Select the type of message.

   ▷ "All"

   ... are displayed.

   ... rom the mobile phone are

   ... sage"

   ... es from the BMW Assist
   ... vice, My Info and BMW
   ... yed.

   ... e"

   ... sages from the mobile
   ... played.

... oncierge service, My Info, and BMW Info can be deleted.

Delete a message:

1. "Office"

2. "Messages"

3. Select the desired message.

4. Open "Options".

5. "Delete message"

Delete all messages:

1. "Office"

2. "Messages"

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

3. Open "Options".

4. "Delete all messages" or "Delete service messages"

Text messages

Calling the sender of a text message

1. Select the desired message.

2. ✎ Select the symbol.

Saving the sender in the contacts

1. Highlight the desired message.

2. Open "Options".

3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact"

Reading the text mes[sage]

Read the text messages

My Info

Starting destination g[uidance]

1. Select the message.

2. "Start guidance" or "A[dd as another] destination"

Dialing the number in [the message]

Up to 4 phone numbers ca[n be transmitted with] a message.

1. Select the desired message.

2. ✎ "Call":

   If the message contains a number, the connection is established.

   ▯ "Select phone number":

   If the message contains more than one number, select the desired number from the list. The connection is established.

Message from the Concierge service

Starting destination guidance

1. Select the desired message.

2. ❦ "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"

3. Start destination guidance, if necessary.

Dialing the number in the message

Up to 4 phone numbers can be transmitted with a message.

... message.

... tains a number, the con-
... ed.

... umber":

... ains more than one num-
... ed number from the list.
... established.

... red message.

... ehicle"

Displaying additional information

1. Select the desired message.

2. "Further information"

BMW Info

Starting destination guidance

1. Select the desired message.

2. ❦ "Start guidance" or "Add as another destination"

Dialing the number in the message

Up to 4 phone numbers can be transmitted with a message.

1. Select the desired message.

2. ✎ "Call":

   If the message contains a number, the connection is established.

   ☐ "Select phone number":

   If the message contains more than one number, select the desired number from the list. The connection is established.

E-mail*

Displaying e-mails

1. "Office"

2. "Messages"

3. Select the desired e...

Displaying e-mail c...

If the sender and recipie... mitted by the mobile ph... displayed in the e-mail.

👥 "Sender/Recipient"

If the e-mail addresses a... tacts, the contact is disp... tact to display details.

If the e-mail addresses a... tacts, only the e-mail ad...

Using contact data

Contact data from appo... notes can be saved or s... page 230.

Deactivating the full display

When an e-mail is opened in the vehicle, the e-mail is fully transmitted to the vehicle. This may result in charges.

1. "Office"

2. "Messages"

3. Open "Options".

4. "Fully download e-mails"

   Only a part of the email from the cell phone is loaded into the vehicle.

Reading the e-mail out loud*

Read the e-mail out loud, refer to page 230.

Calendar

Display the calendar

Appointments during the last 20 and the next 50 days can be displayed.

1. "Office"

2. "Calendar"

   The appointments on the current day are displayed.

Selecting the calendar day

..., 03.07.
...eam Meeting
...ffice

...l day or date.

... "

▷ Today

Display the appointment

1. Select the desired appointment.

2. Scroll through the appointment if necessary:

   ▷ Turn the controller.

   ▷ 📖 📖 Select the symbol.

Using contact data

Contact data from appointments, e-mails and notes can be saved or selected*, refer to page 230.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Reading the appointment out loud*

Read the appointment out loud, refer to page 230.

Tasks

Displaying the task list

Display tasks that are due within the next 90 days.

1. "Office"
2. "Tasks"

Sorting the task list

1. Select the header in the task list.

2. Select the sorting crit
   - ▷ "Priority (!)"*
   - ▷ "Subject"
   - ▷ "Due date"

Displaying the task

1. Select the desired task.
2. Scroll in the task if necessary:
   - ▷ Turn the controller.
   - ▷ 📖 📖 Select the symbol.

Using contact data

Contact data from appointments, e-mails and notes can be saved or selected*, refer to page 230.

Reading the task out loud*

Read the task out loud, refer to page 230.

Notes

Displaying notes

1. "Office"
2. "Notes"

   All notes are displayed.

Displaying the note

1. Select the desired note.

necessary:

ller.

the symbol.

ointments, e-mails and selected*, refer to

ut loud*

, refer to page 230.

Reminders

Displaying reminders

Reminders of pending appointments and tasks are displayed. After an appointment or after a task is due, the reminder is no longer displayed.

1. "Office"
2. "Reminders"
3. Select the desired reminder.

The corresponding appointment or the task are displayed.

229

Using contact data

At a glance

Contact data from calendar entries, appointments, tasks, emails and notes can be stored or selected*.

Displaying contact or selecting phone number

1. 🔍 "Use contact data"
2. Display the contact or select the phone number:
   ▷ Select the contact to display contact details.
   ▷ Select the phone number to establish a connection direc

Storing contact dat

1. 🔍 "Use contact da
2. Highlight the phone dress.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Add to existing con contact"

Reading out lou

Text messages, e-mails tasks, and notes can be

1. Select the desired message, appointment, task, or note.
2. ▷ Select the symbol.

The following options are available during reading:

▷ ❙❙ "Pause"

Interrupt reading. Select again to restart reading.

▷ |◁ "Back to beginning"

Start reading message again from the beginning.

▷ ▷| Select the symbol.

Skip a paragraph.

▷ |◁ Select the symbol.

Go back one paragraph.

▷ To end reading, tilt the controller to the left.

What to do if...

Information on suitable mobile phones, refer to page .

Appointments, tasks, notes, text messages, or e-mails from the mobile phone are not displayed.

▷ The mobile phone is not capable of the missing function or is not connected correctly.

▷ The Office function is deactivated.

▷ ... is connected as an addi-

▷ ... older than 20 days or are ... s in the future.

▷ ... en marked as completed ... that lies more than ... ure.

▷ ... number of stored appointments, notes, and messages in ... not all are displayed in the ...

... and tasks from the mobile ... t the right time?

▷ ... e or date is incorrectly set ... splay and mobile phone.

The e-mail attachment is not displayed.

▷ E-mails are transmitted without an attachment.

Entries are not displayed in full length.

▷ Text were already transmitted from the mobile phone in a shortened form.

▷ Synchronization between the mobile phone and vehicle may take several minutes.

The contact pictures are not being displayed?

▷ A max. of 200 contact pictures can be stored in the vehicle.

The E-mail is displayed with a delay?

▷ Check the e-mail settings on the telephone and adjust if necessary.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, please contact the hotline or service center.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Contacts*

General information

Contacts can be created and edited and the addresses can be adopted as destinations for navigation.

New contact

1. "Contacts"
2. "New contact"

3. The entry fields are ~~...~~ ous entries: "Delete

4. Fill in the entry fields ~~...~~ to the entry field.

5. Enter the text, refer to page 24.
6. If the vehicle is equipped with a navigation system: Enter the address. Only addresses contained in the navigation data in the vehicle can be entered. This ensures that destination guidance is possible for all addresses.
7. If necessary, "Store".
8. "Store contact in vehicle"

Specifying the home address

A home address can be stored. It appears at the top of the contact list.

1. "Home"
2. Create a contact.
3. "Store contact in vehicle"

My contacts

General information

List of all contacts stored in the vehicle.

in alphabetical order. De-
~~...~~ er of contacts, an A-Z
search is offered, refer to page 24.

A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts:

Symbol	Storage location
No symbol	In the vehicle; the address has not been checked as a destination.
ⓐ	In the vehicle; the address has been checked as a destination*.

Editing a contact

1. Select the desired contact.
2. "Edit contact"

3. Change the entries.
4. Move the controller to the left.
5. "Yes"

Selecting the contac~~t~~
destination*

1. Select the desired co~~ntact~~
2. Select the address.
3. "Start guidance" or "A~~dd as~~
   destination"

Checking the addres~~s~~

An address that is to be u~~sed for~~
guidance must match the ~~data con-~~
tained in the vehicle. The ~~address is~~
checked for this purpose.

1. Select the desired co~~ntact and~~
   address.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Check as destination"
4. Correct and store the address if necessary.

Selecting the sorting order of the names

Names can be displayed in a different order.

1. "My contacts"
2. Highlight the contact.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Display: last, first name" or "Display: first, last name"

Exporting/importing contacts

Contacts can be exported and imported via the Personal Profile, refer to page .

Deleting contacts

1. "My contacts"
2. Highlight the contact.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete contact" or "Delete all contacts"

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

BMW ConnectedDrive

BMW Assist*

General information

BMW Assist provides you with certain services, e.g., transmission of the position data of your vehicle to the BMW Assist Response Center if an Emergency Request* has been initiated.

Many BMW Assist services depend on the individually agreed upon contract.

After your contract has expired, the BMW Assist system will be deactivated by the BMW Assist Response Center without your having to visit a service center. After the
has been deactivated, n
will be available. The BM
reactivated by a service
new contract.

Requirements

▷ The installed BMW
   in to a wireless com
   This network must b
   ting the services.

▷ To transmit position
   be able to determine

▷ The BMW Assist se
   signed with your ser
   BMW Assist Respon
   must have been completed.

▷ BMW Assist is activated.

Services offered

▷ Emergency Request: when you press the SOS button, a connection to the BMW Assist Response Center is established. The BMW Assist Response Center then speaks with you and takes further steps to help you.

▷ Automatic Collision Notification: under certain conditions, a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center after a serious accident. If possible, the BMW As-

sist Response Center then speaks with you and takes further steps to help you.

▷ Enhanced Roadside Assistance: BMW Roadside Assistance* can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown. If possible, the vehicle and position data are transmitted in the process.

▷ Customer Relations: connection with Customer Relations for information on all aspects of your vehicle.

▷ TeleService: data on your vehicle's service status or required inspections are transmit-
   ted to your service center, either automati-
   ... ice due date or when you
   ... ervice appointment.

▷ ... ock: the BMW Assist Re-
   ... vides assistance if, for ex-
   ... e control is not available
   ... eds to be opened.

▷ ... covery: after you report
   ... as stolen to the police, the
   ... onse Center can deter-

... e services, the optional
... offers Concierge service
... r route planning, traffic,
... ited number of calls can
... MW Assist Response
Center with Critical Calling if, for example, the mobile phone is not available or discharged.

Press the SOS button to contact the BMW Assist Response Center.

BMW TeleService*

General information

TeleService supports communication with your service center.

▷ Data on the vehicle's service requirements can be sent directly to the service center. In this way, the service center can plan its work

234

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

in advance. This shortens the duration of the service appointment.

▷ In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition can be sent directly to Roadside Assistance.

▷ The service varies by country.

▷ Connection costs may ensue.

▷ Services may be restricted abroad.

Requirements

▷ BMW Assist is activated.

▷ Wireless reception is available.

▷ The engine is running.

Use of BMW TeleService*

The TeleServices are typ[...] vehicle.

Even TeleService Custom[...] tive, a voice contact to R[...] still possible.

To continue using or to d[...] please contact your servic[...] customer hotline.

Concierge servi[...]

General information

The BMW Assist Concierg[...] mation on events, gas sta[...] provides phone numbers and addresses. Hotels can be booked directly by the BMW Assist Concierge service. The Concierge service is part of the optional BMW Convenience Plan.

Starting the Concierge service

1. "ConnectedDrive"

2. "Concierge"

3. "Start service"

A voice connection is established with the BMW Assist Concierge service. Phone numbers and addresses can be transmitted to the vehicle.

[...]stance

[...]nce* can be contacted if [...] the event of a break-

[...]can also be contacted via [...]ge, refer to page 83.

[...]Assistance

[...]ped with BMW [...]eService

[...]ce"

The Roadside Assistance number is displayed. If the mobile phone* is paired, a connection is established to Roadside Assistance.

Vehicles equipped with BMW Assist or BMW TeleService

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Roadside Assistance"
3. "Start service"

TeleService Diagno

TeleService Diagnosis e
transmission of detailed
important for vehicle dia
transmitted automatical

After the data are transr
nection to Roadside Ass
lished.

TeleService Help*

TeleService Help enable
of the vehicle by Roadsi
less transmission.

TeleService Help can be
by Roadside Assistance
the voice connection.

Starting TeleService Help

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. The engine is running.
4. "TeleService Help"

After completion of TeleService Help, a voice connection is established to Roadside Assistance.

BMW Online*

At a glance

A business search can be opened via BMW Online.

License conditions

This product contains NetFront Browser software of ACCESS Co., Ltd. Copyright © 2007 ACCESS Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD., in Japan and other countries.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

e optional Convenience

current.

ated within wireless net-

line

3. If necessary, "OK".

The BMW Online home page is displayed.

Operating BMW Online

To start a search:

▷ Turn the controller to highlight an element.

▷ Press the controller to display an element.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Opening the start page

1. Open "Options".
2. "Display start page"

Loading a new page

1. Open "Options".
2. "Reload"

Cancel

1. Open "Options".
2. "Cancel loading"

Customer Relat

At a glance

Contact Customer Relatic
all aspects of your vehicle

Calling Customer Re

Vehicles not equippe
Assist or BMW TeleService

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Customer Relations"

The Customer Relations phone number is displayed. If the mobile phone* is paired, a connection is established to Customer Relations.

Vehicles equipped with BMW Assist or BMW TeleService

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Customer Relations"
3. "Start service"

st*

ur service partner to re-
of a service appoint-
data is transmitted dur-
lf possible, your service
ntact with you.

Request

A Service Request can be started via a Check Control message, refer to page 83.

237

Automatic Service Request*

The TeleService data necessary for servicing the vehicle are automatically sent to your service partner prior to the service deadline. If possible, the service partner will contact you and a service appointment can be arranged.

To check when your service partner was notified:

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"

3. Open "Options".
4. "Last Service Reque[st]"

Services status*

General information
Check services status.

Displaying available services
Display of all services available in the vehicle.

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "Service Status"

3. "Available services"

Updating BMW Assist
Manual update of TeleService* and BMW Assist*.

"Update BMW Assist"

f BMW services, display
transfer.

ications of a suitable cell
ed in the vehicle. These
software applications are displayed on the Control Display.

They are operated via iDrive.

Requirements
▷ The mobile phone is suitable.
▷ The cell phone operating system supports the software applications of Apps.
▷ Software applications are installed on the cell phone and ready to use.
▷ Corresponding mobile wireless contract.
   Any additionally incurred costs are not a part of Apps.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

▷ Use only BMW approved software applications; otherwise, it may result in malfunctions.

Information about suitable cell phones, available software applications and their installation can be found at www.bmw.com/connectivity or at the service center.

⚠ Create the entries.

Make entries only when traffic and road conditions allow. Otherwise, the vehicle occupants and other road users may be put in danger because of the distraction from driving.

For reasons of safety, some software applications are usable only while the vehicle is stationary.◄

Operate Apps

1. Connect the cell pho[...]
   adapter or via the USB[...]

2. "ConnectedDrive"[...]

3. Select the desired sof[...]

Displaying status

Information about the cur[...]
ware applications can be [...]

1. "ConnectedDrive"

2. "BMW apps"

PlugIn*

Selected functions of the [...]
played on the Control Display. They can be operated via iDrive.

1. Connect cell phone via the snap-in adapter.

2. "ConnectedDrive"

3. "PlugIn"

4. "Activate PlugIn"

5. Navigate to the displayed functions via the controller and select, for example, a desired category or track.

BACK Press button to switch within the cell phone functions to a higher level or back.

MENU Press button twice to switch back to the main menu.

Notes

▷ The ranges of Apps that can be displayed on the Control Display depend on the range of installed software applications on the cell phone.

▷ The data transmission of the software applications from the cell phone to the vehicle can last some time. Some software applications depend on the speed of the available Internet connection of the cell phone.

▷ Some cell phones cannot simultaneously use Apps and the Bluetooth hands-free sys[...]

[...] the software application [...]fter a phone conversa-

[...]eport*

[...]a that is evaluated for the [...]of BMW products from [...]regular intervals if nec-

[...]ctivated in vehicles that [...]equirements and have a [...]is feature is free of

[...] or position data is transmitted.

Indicate when the last Teleservice Report was transmitted:

1. "Vehicle Info"

2. "Vehicle status"

3. Open "Options".

4. "Last Teleservice Info"

239

Mobility

 remain mobile at all times, this
you with important information
uels and lubricants, wheels and
e, maintenance, and Roadside
Assistance.

Refueling

Fuel cap

Opening

1. Briefly press the rear edge of the fuel filler flap.

2. Turn the fuel cap co

3. Place the fuel cap in
   the fuel filler flap.

Closing

1. Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Close the fuel filler flap.

Do not pinch the retaining strap

Do not pinch the retaining strap attached to the cap; otherwise, the cap cannot be closed properly and fuel vapors can escape.

A message is displayed if the cap is loose or missing.◄

Manually unlocking fuel filler flap

In the event of an electrical malfunction, for example.

ith the fuel pump symbol. filler flap.

ollowing when

nen the filler nozzle clicks

Handling fuels

Obey safety regulations posted at the gas station.◄

Fuel tank capacity

Gasoline engine Fuel tank capacity: approx. 21.6 US gal/82 liters.

Refuel promptly

Refuel below a range of 30 miles/50 km; otherwise, engine functions are not ensured and damage may occur.◄

Fuel

Fuel quality

⚠️ **Refuel with unleaded fuel only**

Do not use leaded fuel as this would permanently damage the catalytic converter.◀

⚠️ **Do not refuel with ethanol**

Do not refuel with E85, i.e., fuel with an ethanol content of 85 %, or with Flex Fuel, as this would damage the engine and fuel supply system.◀

Required fuel

Super premium gaso

This gasoline is highly rec

Gasoline with lower A

However, you may also us AKI.

The minimum AKI Rating

If you use gasoline with th ing, the engine may produ when starting at high outs

This has no effect on the

⚠️ **Minimum fuel grade**

Do not use any gaso mum specified fuel grade, damage may occur.◀

Use high-quality brands

Field experience has indicated significant differences in fuel quality: volatility, composition, additives, etc., among gasolines offered for sale in the United States and Canada.

Fuels containing up to and including 10 % ethanol or other oxygenates with up to 2.8 % oxygen by weight, that is, 15 % MTBE or 3 % methanol plus an equivalent amount of co-solvent, will not void the applicable warranties with respect to defects in materials or workmanship.

⚠️ **Minimum fuel grade**

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in driveability, starting and stalling problems especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude.

Should you encounter driveability problems which you suspect could be related to the fuel you are using, we recommend that you respond by switching to a recognized high-quality brand such as gasoline that is advertised as Top Tier Detergent Gasoline.

Failure to comply with these recommendations led maintenance.◀

fuels 🔆

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

243

Wheels and tires

Tire inflation pressure

Safety information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

▷ The service life of the tires.

▷ Road safety.

▷ Driving comfort.

Checking the pressure

Only check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after driving no more than 1.25 miles/2 km or been parked for at least are warm, the tire inflati

⚠ Check the tire infla

Regularly check th and correct it as needec and before a long trip. If precaution, you may be correct tire pressures, a only compromise your vehicle but also lead to tire dam accident.◂

After correcting the tire itialize the Tire Pressure

Pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 244, contains all pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. Pressure specifications apply to approved tire sizes and recommended tire brands. This information can be obtained from your service center.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

▷ Tire sizes of your vehicle.

▷ Vehicle load.

▷ Maximum allowable driving speed.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/ 160 km/h

For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 244, and adjust as necessary.

s can also be found on the label on the driver's door

ssible speed

00 mph/160 km/h; other-accidents may result.◂

sure values up to h

750Li

	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/ PSI with cold tires	🚶🚶🚶+🚶/🧳🚗	
245/50 R 18 100 V M +S A/S	2.2 / 32	2.4 / 35
245/50 R 18 100 H M +S		

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL A/S	2.4 / 35	2.6 / 38
245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL		
F.: 245/45 R 19 98 Y	2.2 / 32	-
R.: 275/40 R 19 101 Y	-	2.3 / 33
F.: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL	2.4 / 35	-
R.: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL	-	2.6 / 38
F.: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL	2.6 / 38	-
R.: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL	-	

760Li

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in ar/PSI with cold tires		
245/50 R 18 100 V M +S A/S		
245/50 R 18 100 H M +S		
245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL A/S	2.4 / 35	2.6 / 38
245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL		
F.: 245/45 R 19 98 Y	2.3 / 33	-
R.: 275/40 R 19 101 Y	-	2.3 / 33

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
F.: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL	2.5 / 36	-
R.: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL	-	2.5 / 36
F.: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL	2.8/41	-
R.: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL	-	2.9 /42

750i xDrive, 750Li xDrive

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
	2.2 / 32	2.4 / 35
	2.4 / 35	2.6 / 38
	2.2 / 32	-
R.: 275/40 R 19 101 Y	-	2.3 / 33
F.: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL	2.5 / 36	-
R.: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL	-	2.6 / 38
F.: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL	2.8 / 41	-
R.: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL	-	3.0 / 44

Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

⚠️ Speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise tire damage and accidents could occur.◄

Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

740i, 740Li, 750i, 750Li

Without high-speed tuning feature

Tire size		
Specifications in bar/ PSI with cold tires		
245/50 R 18 100 V M +S A/S		
245/50 R 18 100 H M +S		
245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL A/S		
245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL		
F.: 245/45 R 19 98 Y	2.2 / 32	-
R.: 275/40 R 19 101 Y	-	2.3 / 33
F.: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL	2.4 / 35	-
R.: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL	-	2.6 / 38
F.: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL	2.6 / 38	-
R.: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL	-	3.0 / 44

With high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI
Specifications in bar/ PSI with cold tires	🚶🚶🚶+🚶/📦
245/50 R 18 100 H M +S	2.5 / 36	2.8 / 41
245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL	2.7 / 39	3.2 / 46
F.: 245/45 R 19 98 Y	2.5 / 36	-
R.: 275/40 R 19 101 Y	-	2.6 / 38
F.: 245/40 R 20 99 Y	2.7 / 39	-
	-	2.9 /42
L		
	2.9 /42	-
	-	3.3 / 48

...uning feature

	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI
	🚶🚶🚶+🚶/📦
245/50 R 18 100 V M +S A/S	2.6 / 38	2.8 / 41
245/50 R 18 100 H M +S		
245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL A/S	2.8 / 41	3.1 / 45
245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL		
F.: 245/45 R 19 98 Y	2.5 / 36	-
R.: 275/40 R 19 101 Y	-	2.5 / 36

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
F.: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL	2.7 / 39	-
R.: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL	-	2.7 / 39
F.: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL	3.0 / 44	-
R.: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL	-	3.1 / 45

With high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in psi/ kilopascal with cold tires		
245/50 R 18 100 V M +S A/S 245/50 R 18 100 H M +S		
245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL A/S 245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL		
F.: 245/45 R 19 98 Y R.: 275/40 R 19 101 Y		
F.: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL R.: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL		2.8 / 41
F.: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL R.: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL	3.2 / 46 -	- 3.2 / 46

750i xDrive, 750Li xDrive

Without high-speed tuning feature

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in psi/ kilopascal with cold tires		
245/50 R 18 100 V M +S A/S 245/50 R 18 100 H M +S	2.4 / 35	2.6 / 38
245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL A/S 245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL	2.6 / 38	2.8 / 41
	2.2 / 32 -	- 2.3 / 33
	2.5 / 36 -	- 2.6 / 38
	2.8 / 41 -	- 3.0 / 44

...g feature

	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in psi/ kilopascal with cold tires		
245/50 R 18 100 V M +S A/S 245/50 R 18 100 H M +S	2.6 / 38	2.9 /42

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

247

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL A/S	2.8 / 41	3.2 / 46
245/45 R 19 102 V M +S XL		
F.: 245/45 R 19 98 Y	2.4 / 35	-
R.: 275/40 R 19 101 Y	-	2.5 / 36
F.: 245/40 R 20 99 Y XL	2.7 / 39	-
R.: 275/35 R 20 102 Y XL	-	2.7 / 39
F.: 245/35 R 21 96 Y XL	3.0 / 44	-
R.: 275/30 R 21 98 Y XL		

Tire identificati

Tire size

255/50 R 19 103 Y

255: nominal width in m

50: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

19: rim diameter in inche

103: load rating, not for

Y: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

Speed letter

T = up to 118 mph, 190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph, 210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph, 240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph, 270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph, 300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 3510

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

3510: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

DOT … 3510: the tire was manufactured in the 35th week in 2010.

Recommendation

Regardless of wear, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

ear 200; Traction AA;

es

s must conform to Federal in addition to these

is a comparative rating e of the tire when tested litions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature c… of the tire to degenerate a… excessive temperature ca… failure. The grade C corre… performance which all pa… meet under the Federal M… Standard No. 109. Grades… higher levels of performar… test wheel than the minim…

⚠️ Temperature grade…
The temperature gr… tablished for a tire that is … not overloaded. Excessive… tion, or excessive loading, … combination, can cause h… sible tire failure.

If necessary, have the vehicle towed.◀

RSC – Run-flat tires

Run-flat tires, refer to page , are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the sidewall.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

Tire tread

Summer tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

There is an increased danger of hydroplaning if the tread depth is less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.16 in/4 mm.

Below a tread depth of 0.16 in/4 mm, tires are less suitable for winter operation.

Minimum tread depth

…tributed around the tire's … e the legally required …3 in/1.6 mm.

… side of the tire with TWI,

Tire damage

General information

Inspect your tires often for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Notes

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle defects:

▷ Unusual vibrations during driving.

▷ Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

⚠️ In case of tire damage

If there are indications of tire damage, reduce your speed immediately and have the wheels and tires checked right away; otherwise, there is the increased risk of an accident.

Drive carefully to the next service center or tire shop.

If necessary, have the vehicle towed.◀

⚠️ Repair of tire damage

For safety reasons, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you do not have damaged tires repaired; they should be replaced. Otherwise, damage can occur as a result.◀

Changing whee

Mounting

⚠️ Information on mo

Have mounting an only by a service center

If this work is not carried the danger of subseque safety hazards.◀

Wheel and tire comb

Information on the corre tion and rim versions for tained from your service center

Incorrect wheel and tire combinations impair the function of a variety of systems such as ABS or DSC.

To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer.

Following tire damage, have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

⚠️ Approved wheels and tires

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you use only wheels and tires that have been approved for your particular vehicle model.

For example, despite having the same official size ratings, variations can lead to body contact and with it, the risk of severe accidents.

The manufacturer of your vehicle cannot evaluate non-approved wheels and tires to determine if they are suited for use, and therefore cannot ensure the operating safety of the vehicle if they are mounted.◀

Recommended tire brands

manufacturer of your vehicle... rtain tire brands. These star on the tire sidewall.

e tires meet the highest nd handling.

Due to technical factors associated with their manufacture, tires do not achieve their full traction potential until after an initial breaking-in period.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/ 300 km.

Retreaded tires

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

Retreaded tires
Possibly substantial variations in the design and age of the tire casing structures can limit service life and have a negative impact on road safety.◄

Winter tires

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends winter tires for winter roads or at temperatures below +45 °F/+7 °C.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires do provide better winter traction than summer tires, they do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the than the permissible spee then display a correspond vision. You can obtain this cialist or from your servic

Maximum speed for
Do not exceed the m winter tires; otherwise, tir dents can occur.◄

Run-flat tires

For your own safety, only spare tire is available in the service center will be glad

Rotating wheels between axles

The manufacturer of your vehicle advises against swapping wheels between the front and rear axles.

This can impair the handling characteristics.

Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible.

Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels.

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Run-flat tires*

Label

RSC label on the tire sidewall.

The wheels are composed of special rims and tires that are self-supporting, to a limited de-

wall allows the tire to re-
cted degree in the event

a damaged tire., refer to

ires
ly use run-flat tires. No
he case of a flat tire. Your
ad to advise you.

ins
Only certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of your vehicle, classified as road-safe and recommended.

Consult your service center for more information.

Use

Use only in pairs on the rear wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

▷ 245/50 R 18.

▷ 245/45 R 19.

Follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

251

Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Retighten as needed according to the chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the Tire Pressure Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control if necessary.

Maximum speed with snow chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

Snow chain detection*

The concept

When using snow chain
whether you are driving
chains via the iDrive.

The snow chain detectic
by automatically showin
the Control Display.

When snow chains are in
ing of the Integral Active
vated automatically.

At speeds above the ma
with snow chains of 30 r
axle steering is activatec

Activating the statu

1. "Settings"
2. "Tire chains"
3. "Tire chains installed"

Automatic detection

If functioning properly:

▷ Snow chains are mounted. The setting is not activated ☐ .

   After you drive a short distance, a Check Control message is shown and the state is activated automatically.

   Confirm the automatic activation.

▷ Snow chains are not mounted. The setting is activated ☑ .

At speeds above 30 mph/50 km/h, a Check Control message is displayed. Deactivate the status manually.

If not functioning properly:

▷ Snow chains are mounted. The setting is not activated ☐ .

   A Check Control message is not displayed.

   The automatic detection system is malfunctioning. Activate the status manually.

Activating/deactivating rear axle steering

If the status indicating that snow chains are in use is activated, the rear axle steering is deactivated automatically.

nph/50 km/h, the rear axle
gain, even though snow

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Engine compartment

Important features in the engine compartment

1. Vehicle identification ... Li: filler neck is located
2. Jump starting, negati...
3. Washer fluid reservoir ... emoved 760i/Li.
4. Jump starting, positiv...

Hood

... he engine compartment

... :he intermediate spaces or gaps in the engine compartment. Otherwise, there is risk of injury, e.g. from rotating or hot parts.◄

Opening the hood

⚠ Working in the engine compartment

Never attempt to perform any service or repair operations on your vehicle without the necessary professional technical training.

If you are unfamiliar with the statutory guidelines, have any work on the vehicle performed only by a service center.

If this work is not carried out properly, there is the danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◄

1. Pull the lever.

253

2. Press the release handle and open the hood.

3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.

⚠ Danger of injury w

There is a danger o

parts when the hood is o

Closing the hood

Let the hood drop from a height of approx. 16 in/40 cm and push down on it to lock it fully.

The hood must audibly engage on both sides.

⚠ Hood open when driving

If you see any signs that the hood is not completely closed while driving, pull over immediately and close it securely.◄

⚠ Danger of pinching

Make sure that the closing path of the hood is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◄

Engine oil

General information

The engine oil consumption is dependent on the driving style and driving conditions.

Therefore, check the engine oil level after every refueling using the electronic engine oil level check.

Checking the oil level

The concept

The oil level is monitored electronically and displayed on the Control Dis

Requirements

▷ The engine must be r
the vehicle has been
6 miles/10 km.

▷ The vehicle is stoppe
level roadway.

Displaying the oil lev

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

Duration while driving: approx. 5 minutes.

▷ "Engine oil level below minimum. Add 1 quart!"

Add oil within the next 125 miles/200 km.

▷ "Engine oil level too high! Have this checked."

Have the vehicle checked immediately.

⚠️ Too much engine oil
Have the vehicle checked immediately; otherwise, surplus oil can lead to engine damage.◀

ctive. Have this

culated remaining mile-
l service. Have the sys-
on as possible.

oil

flap

When the flap is closed, it must latch

Possible messages

▷ "Engine oil level OK"

▷ "Measurement not possible at this time."

▷ "Measuring engine oil level..."

Duration with the engine running: approx. 3 minutes.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

255

Filler neck

When the indicator lights up in the instrument cluster, add 1 US quart/liter of engine oil within the next 125 miles/200 km.

Recommended oil types, refer to page .

⚠ **Protect children**

Keep oil, grease, e...
dren and heed the warni...
to prevent health risks.◂

Oil types

Note

⚠ **No oil additives**

Oil additives may le...

Approved oil types

Your service center can ...
gine oils have been appr...
turer of your vehicle.

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Only use approved BMW High Performance oil.

Approved oils belong to the viscosity grades SAE 0W-40, SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-40 and SAE 5W-30.

Alternative oil types

If the approved engine oils are not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of another oil with the following specification may be used.

API SM quality standards or higher.

BMW recommends ⊜Castrol

Coolant

General information

⚠ Danger of burns from hot engine

Do not open the cooling system while the ...
se, escaping coolant may ...

... es

... e additives; otherwise, en-
...ur. The additives are
...l.◂

... ater and additives.

...vailable additives are suit-
...Ask your service center for

... Max– mark in the filler
... servoir, have the coolant
level checked if necessary by your service center and add coolant as needed.

Checking

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the cap of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, and then open it.

3. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and max... filler neck.

4. If the coolant is low, sl... the specified level; do...
5. Turn the cap until the...
6. Have the cause of the... nated as soon as poss...

Disposal

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Maintenance

BMW Maintenance System

The maintenance system directs you to required maintenance measures and thereby supports you in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

Condition Based Service CBS

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of your vehicle. Based on this, Condition Based Service determines the maintenance requirements.

The system makes it po
amount of maintenance
profile.

Details on the service re
page 81, can be display
play.

Service data in the

Information on the requi
tinuously stored in the r
service center will read o
the right array of service
hicle.

Therefore, hand your se
mote control that you us

Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have a service center update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

Maintenance and repair should be performed by your service center. Make sure to have regular
res recorded in the vehi-
ranty Information Booklet
the Warranty and Service
adian models. These en-
lar maintenance.

BD Onboard

There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle emissions.

Emissions

▷ The warning lamp lights up:

SERVICE ENGINE SOON

Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

▷ The warning lamp flashes under certain circumstances:

This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Fuel cap

The indicator lamp lights up.

If the fuel cap is not properly tightened, the OBD system may conclude that fuel vapor is escaping. If the cap is then tightened, the display should go out in a short time.

Data memory

Your vehicle records data
eration, faults and user se
stored in the remote contr
with suitable devices, par
hicle is serviced. The data
provide valuable informat
esses and repair or for op
ing vehicle functions furth

In addition, if you signed a
Assist, certain vehicle dat
from the vehicle to facilita
ices.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Replacing components

Tool kit

The tool kit is located in a fold-down cover in the trunk lid.

Unscrew the wing nut t⋯

Wiper blade re⋯

⚠️ Do not fold down t⋯
blades

Do not fold down the wip⋯
not been installed; this ⋯
shield.◄

Replacing the wiper⋯

1. To change the wiper⋯
   page 72, the wiper ⋯

2. Fold up the wipers.

3. Position the wiper blade in a horizontal position.

4. Remove the wiper blade toward one side.

⋯b replacement

⋯on

⋯e an essential contribution

⋯your vehicle recommends
⋯sponding procedures to
⋯you are unfamiliar with
⋯escribed here.

⋯tion of replacement bulbs
⋯.

⋯lbs when they are cool;
otherwise, there is the danger of getting
burned.◄

⚠️ Working on the lighting system

When working on the lighting system, you
should always switch off the lights affected to
prevent short circuits.

To avoid possible injury or equipment damage
when replacing bulbs, observe any instructions
provided by the bulb manufacturer.◄

⚠ Do not touch the bulbs

Do not touch the glass of new bulbs with your bare hands, as even minute amounts of contamination will burn into the bulb's surface and reduce its service life.

Use a clean tissue, cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base.◀

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)

Light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover serve as the light source for controls, display elements and other equipment.

These light-emitting diodes, which are related to conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

⚠ Do not remove the c

Do not remove the c
into the unfiltered light fo
wise, irritation of the retin

Headlamp glass

Condensation can form o
ternal lamps in cool or hum
light is switched on, the c
rates after a short time. T
do not need to be change

If there is a large amount c
droplets form in the lamp,
your service center.

Front lamps, bulb replacement

At a glance

1 Adaptive light control
2 Parking lamp, daytime running lights*

3 Low beams/high beams
4 Turn signal

Xenon lamps

Because of the long life of these bulbs, the likelihood of failure is very low. Switching the lamps on and off frequently shortens their life.

If a xenon bulb fails, switch on the front fog lamps and continue the trip with great care. Comply with local regulations.

⚠ Do not perform work/bulb replacement on xenon headlamps

Have any work on the xenon lighting system, including bulb replacement, performed only by a service center.

present in the system,
tal injuries if work is car-

ting headlamp aim,
W center.

side indicators

ructions on lamps and
).

using LED technology.
vice center in the event

rol

ructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 260.

The illustration shows the left side of the engine compartment.

55-watt bulb, H3.

1. Open the folding cover in the engine compartment.

2. Turn the cap and remove it.

3. Squeeze the holder ...der.
   downward.   ...direction on the right side.

4. Release the holder and fold it upward.
5. Remove the bulb and replace it.
6. Insert the new bulb and attach the cover in the reverse order.

Parking lamps

Follow the general instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 260.

The illustration shows the left side of the engine compartment.

35-watt bulb, H8.

1. Open the folding cover in the engine compartment.

2. Turn the cap and remove it.

4. Remove the bulb and replace it.
5. Insert the new bulb and attach the cover in the reverse order.

Front fog lamps

Follow the general instructions on lamps and bulbs, refer to page 260.

35-watt bulb, H8.

1. Snap out the grill at the recess, arrow.

2. Remove the screw using a screw driver.

3. Pull the lamp out towa
4. Remove the bulb and
5. Insert the new bulb an
   the reverse order.

Tail lamps, bulb repla

At a glance

1 Turn signal
2 Backup lamp
3 Inside brake lamp*
4 Tail lamp
5 Outside brake lamp
6 Rear reflector*

Turn signal, brake, tail, and license plate lamps

Follow the general instructions on lamps and bulbs., refer to page

These lights are made using LED technology.

Contact your service center in the event of a malfunction.

Lamps in the trunk lid

Follow the general instructions on lamps and bulbs., refer to page

Access to the lamps

1. Remove the three screws using the screw driver from the tool kit.

r.

3. Replace the defective bulb.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Inside brake lamp*

21-watt bulb, H21W.

Pull out the bulb and replace it.

Backup lamp

16-watt bulb, W16W.

Pull out the bulb and rep

Changing whee

Notes

The vehicle equipment does not include a spare tire.

When using run-flat tires* or tire sealants, a tire does not need to be changed immediately in the event of pressure loss due to a flat tire.

The tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from your service center.

Jacking points for the vehicle jack

The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located in the positions shown.

Lug bolt lock*

the tool kit or in a storage
the tool kit.

▷ Lug bolt, arrow 1.
▷ Adapter, arrow 2.

Removing

1. Attach the adapter to the wheel lug.
2. Unscrew the lug bolt.

Remove the adapter after screwing the lug bolt back on.

Vehicle battery

Maintenance

The battery is maintenance-free, i.e., the electrolyte will last for the life of the battery.

Your service center will be glad to advise you on questions regarding the battery.

Battery replacement

⚠️ Use approved vehicle batteries only.

Only use vehicle batteries that have been approved for your vehicle by the manufacturer; otherwise, the vehicle could be damaged and systems or functions may not be fully available.◄

After a battery replaceme
registered on the vehicle
to ensure that all comfort
available.

Charging the battery

In the vehicle, only charge
terminals, refer to page 2
partment with the engine

Power failure

After a temporary power
needs to be reinitialized.

Individual settings need t

▷ Seat, mirror, and stee
   store the positions again.

▷ Time: update.

▷ Date: update.

▷ Radio station: save again.

▷ Navigation system: wait for the operability of the navigation.

Disposing of old batteries

♻️ Have old batteries disposed of by your service center or bring them to a recycling center.

Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

Fuses

Notes

⚠️ Replacing fuses

Never attempt to repair a blown fuse and do not replace a defective fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating; this could lead to a circuit overload, ultimately resulting in a fire in the vehicle.◄

Plastic tweezers and information on the fuse types and locations are stored in the fuse box in the cargo area.

In the glove compartment

ow 1, and open the lid,

Open the cover on the right side trim.

Information on the fuse types and locations is found on a separate sheet.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

265

Breakdown assistance

Hazard warning flashers

The button is located in the center console.

Emergency Re[...]

Requirements

▷ Equipment version [...]
package mobile pho[...]

An Emergency Requ[...]
if no mobile phones [...]
hicle.

▷ BMW Assist is activ[...]

▷ The radio ready stat[...]

▷ The BMW Assist sys[...]
wireless communica[...]
ported by BMW Ass[...]

▷ The Assist system is[...]

Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

⚠️ **Emergency Request not guaranteed**
For technical reasons, the Emergency Request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.◄

Service contract

▷ After your contract with BMW Assist has expired, the BMW Assist system can be deactivated by the service center without you having to visit a workshop.

After deactivation, an Emergency Request is no longer possible.

▷ Under certain circumstances, the system can be reactivated by a service center after you sign a new contract.

Initiating an Emergency Request

[...]iefly to open it.

[...]tton until the LED in the

[...]: an Emergency Request

[...]ws, wait in your vehicle
[...]nnection has been estab-

[...]f the connection to the
[...]onse Center has been es-

[...]ncy Request arrives at the
[...]onse Center, the BMW
[...]Center contacts you and
takes further steps to help you.

Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Assist Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain circumstances.

For this purpose, data that are used to determine the necessary rescue measures, such as the current position of the vehicle if it can be established, are transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center.

▷ If the LED is flashing but the BMW Assist Response Center cannot be heard on the hands-free system, the hands-free system may be malfunctioning. However, the BMW

| At a glance |
| Controls |
| Driving tips |
| Navigation |
| Entertainment |
| Communication |
| Mobility |
| Reference |

Assist Response Center may still be able to hear you.

Initiating an Emergency Request automatically

Under certain conditions, an Emergency Request is automatically initiated immediately after a severe accident. Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Warning triangle*

The warning triangle is lo...
on the inside of the trunk

Unscrew the wing nut to o...

First aid kit*

The first aid kit is located in the container on the inside of the trunk lid.

Unscrew the wing nut to open.

Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any items promptly.

Roadside Assistance

Service availability

Roadside Assistance can be reached around the clock in many countries. You can obtain assistance there in the event of a vehicle breakdown.

Roadside Assistance

The Roadside Assistance, refer to page phone number can be viewed on the iDrive or a connection to Roadside Assistance* can be established directly.

Jump starting

...ged, an engine can be ...y of another vehicle and ...y use jumper cables with ...ndles.

...ury or damage to both ...y to the following proce-

...parts

...of potentially fatal injury, ...t with electrical compo- ...is running.◀

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. This information can be found on the battery.

2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.

3. Switch off any electronic systems/power consumers in both vehicles.

⚠️ Bodywork contact between vehicles

Make sure that there is no contact between the bodywork of the two vehicles; otherwise, there is the danger of short circuits.◀

Starting aid terminals

⚠️ Connecting order

Connect the jumper cables in the correct order; otherwise, there is the danger of injury from sparking.◀

The so-called starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as th_____ minal.

The body ground or a sp_____ negative terminal.

Connecting the cab

1. Pull off the cap of the BMW starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the other end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or

body ground of the vehicle providing assistance.

5. Attach the other end of the cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.

   If the vehicle being started has a diesel engine: let the engine of the assisting vehicle run for approx. 10 minutes.

   _____ f the vehicle being started

   _____ attempt is not successful, _____ s before making another _____ allow the discharged bat-

   _____ run for several minutes. _____ mper cables in the reverse

   _____ d recharge if necessary.

_____ and towing

_____ vehicle

Note

Your vehicle is not permitted to be towed. Therefore, contact a service center in the event of a breakdown.

⚠️ Do not have the vehicle towed

Have your vehicle transported on a loading platform only; otherwise, damage may occur.◀

Tow truck

⚠ Do not lift the vehicle

Do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; otherwise, damage may result.◄

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehic

Due to the automatic tran cannot be started by tow-

Have the cause of the sta edied.

Towing other vehicle

General information

⚠ Light towing vehicle

Your vehicle must n vehicle being towed; othe possible to control vehicle

⚠ Attaching the tow b...tow rope correctly

Attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting; connecting it to other vehicle parts may cause damage.◄

▷ Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

▷ If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Towing methods when towing other vehicles

Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please observe the following:

▷ Maneuvering capability is limited during cornering.

▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

Tow rope

e vehicle, make sure that

e associated stresses on s when towing, always n straps.

y rope correctly

ow rope on the tow fit-e can occur when it is se-the vehicle.◄

The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle. It can be screwed in at the front or rear of the BMW. It is located in the container on the inside of the trunk lid.

⚠ Tow fitting, information on use

▷ Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 606 497 - 03 11 490

▷ Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.

▷ Use the tow fitting screwed in at the front for maneuvering the vehicle only.

▷ Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g., do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.

Otherwise, damage to the tow fitting and the vehicle can occur.◀

Screw thread

Push out the cover by p[...] symbol.

Care

Car washes

Notes

⚠️ **Steam jets or high-pressure washers**

When using steam jets or high-pressure washers, hold them a sufficient distance away and use a maximum temperature of 140 °F/ 60 °C.

Holding them too close or using excessively high pressures or temperatures can cause damage or preliminary damage that may then lead to long-term damage.

Follow the operating instr... pressure washer.◀

⚠️ **Cleaning sensors/ca... pressure washers**

When using high-pressur... spray the exterior sensors... Park Distance Control*, f... time and only from a dist... 30 cm.◀

Wash your vehicle frequen... ter.

Intense soiling and road sa... hicle.

Washing in automatic...

Your vehicle can be washed in automatic car washes right from the start.

Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.

Notes

Note the following:

▷ Make sure that the wheels and tires are not damaged by the transport mechanisms.

▷ Fold in the exterior mirrors; otherwise, they may be damaged, depending on the width of the vehicle.

▷ Deactivate the rain sensor, refer to page 71, to avoid unintentional wiper activation.

▷ In some cases, an unintentional alarm can be triggered by the interior motion sensor of the alarm system*. Follow the instructions on avoiding an unintentional alarm, refer to page 44.

⚠️ **Guide rails in car washes**

Avoid car washes with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm; otherwise, the vehicle body could be damaged.◀

... a car wash

...oll when the following

...pedal.

...on position N.

...g brake, refer to page 66, ...natic Hold, refer to

...off.

... position P with the igni-

...switched off, position P ...tically. When in an auto-...example, ensure that the ignition is not switched off accidentally.◀

The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in transmission position N.

A signal is sounded when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

Transmission position

Transmission position P is engaged automatically:

▷ When the ignition is switched off.

▷ After approx. 15 minutes.

271

Headlamps

▷ Do not rub dry and do not use abrasive or caustic cleansers.

▷ Soak areas that have been soiled e.g. due to insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.

▷ Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced and corrosion of the brake discs can occur.

Vehicle care

Car care products

BMW recommends usir
products from BMW, sir
tested and approved.

Car care and clear
Follow the instruct

When cleaning the inter
windows.

Only use products inten
cles.

Cleansers can contain su
gerous and harmful to y

Vehicle paint

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention.

Environmental influences can act on the vehicle paint. Tailor the frequency and extent of your car care to these influences.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather often, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased

wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently as dust and dirt are more noticeable.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

Suitable care products are available from the service center.

Upholstery material care

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

.g., beverage stains, use a
iber cloth with a suitable

down to the seams using
ns. Avoid rubbing the ma-

elcro® fasteners

asteners on pants or other
damage the seat covers.
o® fasteners are closed.◄

components

s

rticularly during the winter months. Do not use aggressive, acidic, strongly alkaline or abrasive cleaners, or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C; follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Chrome surfaces*

Carefully clean components such as the radiator grille or door handles with an ample supply of water, possibly with shampoo added, particularly when they have been exposed to road salt.

Rubber components

Aside from water, treat only with rubber cleansers.

272

When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing car care products in order to avoid damage or reduced noise damping.

Fine wood parts*

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Plastic components

These include:

▷ Imitation leather surfaces.

▷ Headliner.

▷ Lamp lenses.

▷ Instrument cluster cover.

▷ Matte black spray-co

Clean with a microfiber cl

Moisten the cloth lightly a
cleanser, if necessary.

Do not soak the headliner

⚠ Do not use cleanser
or solvents

Do not use cleansers that
vents, such as lacquer thi
grease removers, fuel, or s
surface damage.◀

Safety belts

Dirty belt straps impede t
thus have a negative impact on safety.

⚠ Chemical cleaning
Do not clean chemically; this can destroy the webbing.◀

Use only a mild soapy solution, with the safety belts clipped into their buckles.

Do not allow the reels to retract the safety belts until they are dry.

Floor carpets and floor mats*

⚠ No objects in the area around the pedals
Keep floor mats, carpets, and any other objects out of the area of motion of the pedals; otherwise, the function of the pedals could be impeded while driving

Do not place additional floor mats over existing mats or other objects.

Only use floor mats that have been approved for the vehicle and can be properly fixed in place.

Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed for cleaning, for example.◀

Floor mats can be removed from the passenger

very dirty, clean with a
ter or a textile cleaner. To
arpet, rub back and forth
l only.

meras, use a cloth moistunt of glass cleaner.

a microfiber cloth.

cal or household cleans-

Keep all fluids and moisture away from the unit.

Otherwise, they could affect or damage surfaces or electrical components.

Avoid pressing too hard when cleaning and do not use abrasive materials; otherwise, damage can result.◀

Long-term vehicle storage

Your service center can advise you on what to consider when storing the vehicle for longer than three months.

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Reference

r contains technical data, short
voice activation system, and an
kly take you to the information
you need.

Technical data

Dimensions

Width with mirrors, height with roof-mounted aerial

58.7 inches / 1491 mm
58.5 inches / 1487 mm

The two bottom values a... ...nted aerial 760Li: 58.7 in-

Width without mirrors

Length, wheel base

120.9 inches / 3,070 mm
126.4 inches / 3,210 mm
199.8 inches / 5,074 mm
205.3 inches / 5,214 mm

The bottom values apply to L models.

Smallest turning circle

Diameter: 40 ft/12.2 m

750i xDrive, 740d xDrive Ø: 41 ft/12.5 m

L model Ø: 41.7 ft/12.7 m

750Li xDrive Ø: 42.7 ft/13.0 m

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

277

Weights

		740i	740Li
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	5,445/2,470	5,589/2,535
Load	lbs/kg	1,058/480	1,058/480
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,635/1,195	2,701/1,225
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	3,086/1,400	3,164/1,435
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	220/100	220/100
Trunk capacity	cu ft/l	17.7/500	17.7/500

		750i	750Li
Approved gross vehicle weight			5,820/2,640
Load			1,058/480
Approved front axle load			2,855/1,295
Approved rear axle load			3,197/1,450
Approved roof load capacity			220/100
Trunk capacity			17.7/500

			750Li xDrive
Approved gross vehicle weight			5,975/2,710
Load			1,058/480
Approved front axle load			2,976/1,350
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	3,142/1,425	3,208/1,455
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	220/100	220/100
Trunk capacity	cu ft/l	17.7/500	17.7/500

		760Li
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs/kg	6,096/2,765
Load	lbs/kg	948/430
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	3,009/1,365
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	3,208/1,455

		760Li
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	220/100
Trunk capacity	cu ft/l	17.7/500

Capacities

			Notes
Fuel tank	US gal/liters	approx. 21.7/82	Fuel quality, refer to page 243
Windshield and headlamp washer system	US quarts/liters	approx. 5.3/5.0	

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 606 497 - 03 11 490

Short commands of the voice activation system*

General information

Instructions for voice activation system, refer to page 25.

To have the available spoken instructions read out loud: ›Voice commands‹

Adjusting

Vehicle

Function	Command
Open the main menu.	
Open the options.	
Open the settings.	
Info display of the instru	
Settings on the Control	
Open the time and date	
Open the language and	
Open the speed limit.	
Open the light.	
Open the door lock.	
Open the profiles.	

Equipment*

Function	Command
Open the air conditioning settings.	›Climate‹
Open the Head-up Display.	›head up display‹
Enable the rear.	›Allow rear control‹

Vehicle information

Owner's Manual

Function	Command
Open the Owner's Manual.	›Display Owner's Manual‹
Open the Quick Reference Guide.	›Quick reference‹
Open the index.	›Owner's Manual‹
Open the search by pictures.	›Search by pictures‹

Computer

Function	Command
Open the computer.	
Open the trip computer.	

Vehicle

Function	
Open the vehicle informa	
Open the vehicle status.	

Navigation*

General information

Function	Command
Navigation menu.	›Navigation‹
Open the destination entry.	›Enter address‹
Enter the address.	›Enter address‹
Open destination guidance.	›Guidance‹
Start destination guidance.	›Start guidance‹
Terminate destination guidance.	›Stop guidance‹
Open the home address.	›Home address‹
Open the route criteria.	›Route preference‹

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Function	Command
Open the route.	›Route information‹
Switch on the spoken instruction.	›Switch on voice instructions‹
Repeat the spoken instruction.	›Repeat voice instructions‹
Switch off the spoken instruction.	›Switch off voice instructions‹
Display the address book.	›Address book‹
Display the most recent destinations.	›Last destinations‹
Open the traffic bulletins.	›Traffic Info‹
Special destinations.	›Points of interest‹

Map

Function	Command
Display the map.	
Map facing north.	
Map facing the directio...	...vel‹
Perspective map.	
Automatic scaling of th...	...caling‹
Scale...feet.	
Scale...meters.	g., map scale 100 meters
Scale...kilometers.	s‹ e.g., map scale 5 kilo-
Scale...miles.	Map scale in miles‹ e.g., map scale 5 miles

Split screen settings

Function	Command
Split screen.	›Switch on splitscreen‹
Switch off the split screen.	›Turn off split screen‹
Adjust the split screen.	›Split screen content‹
Split screen, map facing north.	›Split screen map facing north‹
Split screen, current position.	›Split screen current position‹

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

Function	Command
Split screen, facing the direction of travel.	›Split screen map in direction of travel‹
Split screen, perspective.	›Split screen perspective‹
Split screen, expanded intersection zoom.	›Splitscreen Exit ramp view‹
Split screen scale...feet.	›Split screen scale ... feet‹ e.g., split screen scale 100 feet
Split screen scale...meters.	›Split screen scale ... meters‹ e.g., split screen scale 100 meters
Split screen scale...kilometers.	›Split screen scale ... kilometers‹ e.g., split screen scale 5 kilometers
Split screen scale...miles.	›Split screen scale ... miles‹ e.g., split screen scale 5 miles
Split screen, highlight th	ditions‹
Split screen, computer.	fo‹
Split screen, trip comput	er‹
Split screen, scale autom	scaling‹

Destination guidance

Function	
Enter a new destination.	
Trip list.	

Radio

FM

Function	Command
Open a frequency.	›Frequency ... megahertz‹ e.g., 93.5 megahertz or frequency 93.5
Open the radio.	›Radio‹
Open the FM stations.	›F M‹
Open the manual search.	›Manual‹

Function	Command
Select a frequency range.	›Select frequency‹
Open a station.	›Select station‹

AM

Function	Command
Open a frequency.	›Frequency ... Kilohertz‹ e.g., frequency 753 or 753 kilohertz
Open the AM stations.	›A M‹
Open the manual search.	›Manual‹

Weather Band

Function	Command
Open the Weather Ban	
Switch on the Weather	
Select a Weather Band	nel‹

Satellite radio*

Function	
Open the satellite radio	
Switch on the satellite	
Select a satellite radio	.g., satellite radio channel 2

Stored stations

Function	Command
Open the stored stations.	›Presets‹
Choose a stored station.	›Select preset‹
Select a stored station.	›Preset ...‹ e.g., stored station 2

CD/Multimedia*

CD/DVD drive

Function	Command
Select a track.	›Track …‹ e.g., track 5 or ›C D track …‹ e.g., CD track 5
Play back a CD.	›C D on‹
Select a CD.	›Select C D‹
Select a CD and track.	›C D … track …‹ e.g., CD 3 track 5
Open the CD and Multimedia menu.	›C D and multimedia‹
CD and DVD.	
Select a DVD.	
Display the entertainmer screen.	

Music collection

Function	
Search for music, open a	
Open the current playba	
Open the music collectic	
Play back the music coll	
Play back the most frequently played tracks.	›Top fifty‹

External devices

Function	Command
Open the external devices.	›External devices‹
Open the Bluetooth devices.	›Bluetooth‹
AUX at front.	›AUX front‹

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

285

Tone

Function	Command
Open the tone settings.	›Tone‹

Telephone*

Function	Command
Dial a phone number.	›Dial number‹
Open the Telephone menu.	›Telephone‹
Display the phone book.	›Phonebook‹
Redialing.	›Redial‹
Display received calls.	
List of messages	
Open the Bluetooth de	

Office*

Function	
Open the Office menu.	
Display Office Today.	
Display the contacts.	
Display the messages.	›Messages‹
Display the calendar.	›Calendar‹
Display the tasks.	›Tasks‹
Display the reminders.	›Reminders‹

Contacts*

Function	Command
Select a name.	›Choose name‹
My contacts.	›My contacts‹
Open the contacts.	›Contacts‹
New contact.	›New contact‹

BMW ConnectedDrive*

Function	Command
Open BMW ConnectedD	
Open BMW Search.	

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

287

Everything from A to Z

Index

289

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference

T

At a glance
Controls
Driving tips
Navigation
Entertainment
Communication
Mobility
Reference

X

Y

At a glance

Controls

Driving tips

Navigation

Entertainment

Communication

Mobility

Reference